

Step Ahead
Together to a bright future

ENGLISH

4th Prim.
2026
FIRST TERM



By a group of specialists



Contents

Part (1) Language Skills _____ 4

Part (2) Revision on Structures _____ 8

Part (3) Unit (1) The Five Senses _____ 18

Unit (2) My Community _____ 56

Unit (3) Animals in Our World _____ 91

Review (1) Test (7) Based on Units 1 -2-3 _____ 127

Unit (4) Egypt: My Homeland _____ 131

Unit (5) A Day at Work _____ 163

Review (2) Test (12) Based on Units 4 -5 _____ 197

Unit (6) Story: The Hundred Dresses _____ 201

Part (4) Listening Scripts _____ 222

Punctuation

1

The capital letters

▶ We use them:

- at the beginning of sentences, names of people, towns, cities, countries, continents, nationalities, languages, days of the week, months of the year, seas, oceans, mountains, rivers, famous places, abbreviations and the pronoun "I".

○ تُستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في بداية الجملة، وبداية أسماء الأشخاص والمدن والبلاد والقارات والجنسيات واللغات وأيام الأسبوع وشهور السنة وأسماء البحار والمحيطات والجبال والأنهار والأماكن الشهيرة، وفي الاختصارات والضمير (I) الذي بمعنى أنا.

○ I saw Mrs Hala in the Egyptian Museum last April.

○ He learns Arabic, English and French at his school.

2

The comma (,)

▶ We use it:

- after (Yes / No), after and before (please), to separate words or, phrases in a list, or to separate two sentences with a conjunction.

○ تُستخدم بعد كلمات (No - Yes) وقبل أو بعد كلمة (please)، وعندما نريد أن نفصل بين كلمات أو عبارات في قائمة، وعندما نريد أن نفصل بين جملتين مرتبطتين برابط.

○ I need flour, butter, eggs and sugar for the cake.

○ Yes, I'd like some juice, please.

○ When I reach my school, I greet all my friends.

3

The full stop (.)

▶ We use it:

- at the end of the statement.

○ My family bought a new car.

○ تُستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

4 The question mark (?)

► We use it:

- at the end of the question. تُستخدم في نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال).
- Where are you going?

5 The exclamation mark (!)

► We use it:

- at the end of a sentence to show a strong feeling. تُستخدم في نهاية الجملة لنظهر شعورًا قويًا أو للتأكيد على معنى الجملة.
- That's interesting!
- What a nice car!
- I love Egypt!
- She's very happy!

Paragraphs

سؤال الـ (Paragraph) أصبح سؤالاً أساسيًا في مواصفات امتحان الصف الرابع الابتدائي، لذا أصبح لزامًا على الطالب أن يتعلم كيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال.

المهارة الأساسية التي يجب أن يتمتع بها الطالب عند كتابة الـ (Paragraph) هي معرفته بكيفية كتابة جملة صحيحة باللغة الإنجليزية، وأيضا قدرته على الحكم على كل جملة يكتبها في الامتحان هل هي جملة صحيحة أم لا، وهل أركان الجملة وزمن الجملة صحيحين أم لا.

How to write
a correct sentence



كيف تكتب جملة صحيحة

الجملة الخبرية Statement

مفعول + فعل + فاعل
subject + verb + object

أركان الجملة هي:

■ She is sleeping.

■ Mom is washing the dishes.

■ We fly our kites in the park on Friday.

فعل + فاعل

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

..... + مفعول + فعل + فاعل

Exam Questions

لاحظ أن:

الفاعل هو أول ركن في الجملة ويأتي بإحدى صورتين، إما اسم (Noun) مثل: (Mom - Ali - Heba - Cats - Egypt - Pollution - The Nile - The builder....) أو ضمير فاعل (Pronoun) يعود على اسم وضمائر الفاعل هي: (I - He - She - It - You - We - They)

لاحظ أن:

الفعل هو ثاني ركن في الجملة ويكتب بعد الفاعل وهو ركن أساسي ومهم جدًا في تكوين الجملة حيث أنه هو الذي يُحدّد زمن الجملة:

▶ I play.....	▶▶▶	زمن مضارع بسيط
▶ She plays	▶▶▶	زمن مضارع بسيط
▶ He is playing	▶▶▶	زمن مضارع مستمر
▶ They played	▶▶▶	زمن ماضي بسيط
▶ We will play.....	▶▶▶	زمن مستقبل بسيط

An example

Write a paragraph of (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Tourism"

✦ Ideas to help you:

monuments - beaches - climate - Egyptians - friendly

لاحظ أنه قبل البدء في كتابة الموضوع لا بد أن تُحدّد الزمن المناسب الذي ستكتب فيه الجمل. فمثلاً في موضوع السياحة واضح أننا سنتكلم عن حقائق، وبالتالي الزمن الأمثل هو المضارع البسيط:

Egypt is famous for its history. Tourists come to Egypt from different countries. They come to enjoy its beautiful beaches. They also come to see its monuments. Egypt has a nice climate all year round. In winter, it is warm and sunny. People in Egypt are very kind. They are friendly to visitors. We should work hard to make more tourists come to Egypt.



Exam Questions

◀ لاحظ أنه يُفَضَّل أن يبدأ الطالب بجملة افتتاحية للموضوع إن أمكن وينتهي بجملة ختامية كما في الجملتين الملونتين بالأعلى. ولكنه ليس شرطاً بالنسبة لطالب الصف الرابع، ولكن إن استطاع الطالب فَعَلَ ذلك فسيكون موضوعه مميزاً بالنسبة لمرحلته العمرية.

◀ لاحظ أنه عند كتابة (Paragraph) يمكننا أن نبدأ الجملة الأولى بالاسم كفاعل ثم نستعيض في الجملة التي تليها عن الاسم بالضمير الذي يعود عليه كالتالي:

- ▶ **Tourists** come to visit Egypt. **They** come to enjoy its beautiful beaches.
- ▶ **The mechanic** works hard. **He** fixes broken cars and buses.
- ▶ **Miss Eman** is our English teacher. **She** is very kind and friendly.
- ▶ **Pollution** harms the environment. **It** is very dangerous.
- ▶ **Lions** are wild animals. **They** live in forests.
- ▶ **My friends and I** went to the zoo. **We** saw so many animals and birds.

Another example

Write a paragraph of (18) words using the following guiding elements:

“A trip to the zoo”

➤ Ideas to help you:

last week - bus - friends - see - eat

◀ في هذا الموضوع سنتكلم عن أحداث وقعت الأسبوع الماضي، وبالتالي لا بد من استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط:

My friends and I like trips very much. Last week, we **went** to the zoo. We **went** by bus. We **arrived** there at nine o'clock. The zoo is very big. We **saw** so many animals and birds. I **enjoyed** seeing the lions very much. We **ate** lunch at two o'clock. We **returned** home at six in the evening. We **were** very happy. **We decided to go on more and more trips.**



ملحوظة هامة:

كل القواعد التي تنطبق على سؤال الـ (Paragraph) هي نفسها تنطبق على أسئلة المهام الأدائية (English Language Performance Tasks).

Term 1

Part 2

General Revision on Grammar

مراجعة على أهم القواعد



Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → like He } She } like s..... It } You } We } like They }	I → don't like He } She } does n't like It } You } We } don't like They }	Do → I like? Does { he like? { she like? { it like? { you like? Do { we like? { they like?



Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → am playing He } She } is playing It } You } We } are playing They }	I → am not playing He } She } is n't playing It } You } We } are n't playing They }	Am → I playing ? Is { he playing ? { she playing ? { it playing ? { you playing ? Are { we playing ? { they playing ?

1 Choose the correct answer:

- He doesn't (has - had - have - having) his lunch at home.
- Salma doesn't (wash - washed - washes - is washing) her clothes.
- Does Ibrahim (watch - watches - watched - watching) TV at night?

4. She's (**have** - **had** - **has** - **having**) lunch now.
5. The bird (**flies** - **fly** - **flied** - **is flying**) at the moment.
6. Does she (**brush** - **brushes** - **is brushing** - **brushed**) her hair daily?
7. Fady (**did** - **does** - **is doing** - **do**) his homework now.
8. We don't (**walking** - **walk** - **walked** - **walks**) to school. We go by bus.
9. Do Ali and Hosam (**help** - **helps** - **helped** - **helping**) their father?
10. Look! He (**climbed** - **climbs** - **climbing** - **is climbing**) the tree.
11. My mother (**cooking** - **cooked** - **cooks** - **is cooking**) lunch now.
12. Mohsen (**did** - **doing** - **do** - **does**) his homework in the evening.
13. He's (**walk** - **walks** - **walked** - **walking**) to his office.
14. She (**has** - **is having** - **have** - **having**) dinner with her family.
15. He (**is riding** - **ride** - **riding** - **rides**) his bike on Fridays.
16. Mohamed is (**helped** - **help** - **helps** - **helping**) an old man cross the street.
17. Noha (**write** - **wrote** - **writes** - **is writing**) her homework every day.
18. I (**thinking** - **are thinking** - **think** - **thinks**) you are a clever pupil.
19. They (**are playing** - **has played** - **have playing** - **is playing**) basketball.
20. We (**are drinking** - **has drink** - **drink** - **drinks**) milk every day.

2 Complete the following sentences using: don't - doesn't

1. I like koshari.
2. She go to school late.
3. We watch TV in the morning.
4. They go to school on Saturday.
5. You waste your time.
6. He walk to school.
7. It eat grass.
8. Heba make her bed.
9. Islam get up late.
10. I speak in class.

Revision

3 Make questions as in the examples:

1. They like fish.

▶ Do they like fish?

2. He likes apples.

▶ Does he like apples?

3. We eat lunch at two.

▶ ?

4. Omar cleans his shoes.

▶ ?

5. Mai brushes her hair.

▶ ?

6. We help our teachers.

▶ ?

7. I love my school.

▶ ?

8. The parrot speaks loudly.

▶ ?

9. They write their homework.

▶ ?

(and - or)

▶ I like tea **and** coffee.

▶ I don't like snakes **or** spiders.

تُستخدم (and) في الجمل المثبتة غالبًا، ولكن يمكن أن تأتي أيضًا في الجمل المنفية أو الاستفهامية. بينما تُستخدم (or) في الأسئلة والجمل المنفية كثيرًا، لكنها تأتي أيضًا في الجمل المثبتة.

4 Complete the following sentences using: **and - or**

1. He likes football basketball.

2. She likes drawing reading.

3. Nahla doesn't like tea coffee.

4. I like bananas apples.

5. Ahmed can't swim fly.

6. Noura can't read write French.
7. My sister doesn't drink milk lemonade.
8. I don't go to the club the park on school days.
9. He can run jump.
10. Some birds can walk fly.
11. Samira likes cooking watching TV.
12. Rabbits can walk jump.
13. He doesn't sleep eat in class.
14. We don't play run at home.
15. She brushes her teeth hair daily.
16. I like my school my teachers.
17. My mom cleans the flat cooks the food.
18. He can't play handball volleyball.
19. She doesn't eat her breakfast her sandwiches.
20. He combs his hair cleans his shoes every morning.

Verb (to be)

Affirmative الإثبات		Negative النفي		Interrogative الاستفهام
I → am	I'm	I am not	I'm not	Am I?
He → is	He's	He is not	He isn't	Is he?
She → is	She's	She is not	She isn't	Is she?
It → is	It's	It is not	It isn't	Is it?
You → are	You're	You are not	You aren't	Are you?
We → are	We're	We are not	We aren't	Are we?
They → are	They're	They are not	They aren't	Are they.....?

5 Complete the following sentences using: **am - is - are**

1. These her toys.
2. Those three boats.
3. It a bird.
4. Our school a big building.
5. It time to go to school.
6. She at school now.
7. What these?
8. He a shopkeeper.
9. You a good boy, Magdy.
10. There a rubber on the desk.
11. We in grade four.
12. There some oranges on the table.
13. Emad and Amr clever boys.

Verb to be in the past

was

I - He - She - It - singular
noun (أي اسم مفرد)

were

You - We - They - plural
noun (أي اسم جمع)

6 Choose the correct answer:

1. My friends and I (**is - am - was - were**) very happy.
2. Tom (**is - was - am - were**) scary in the last play.
3. She (**is - are - was - were**) in the zoo last weekend.
4. The party (**am - was - were - is**) fun last night.
5. They (**weren't - was - is - were**) wet. It was raining.
6. Heba and Ola (**was - is - were - are**) at the park last Friday.
7. I (**was - were - is - am**) at the club yesterday.
8. Magda (**was - were - is - are**) at home with her family.
9. It (**is - was - are - were**) very hot yesterday afternoon.
10. We (**was - is - were - weren't**) sad. We were happy.



Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I He She It You We They } played ...	I He She It You We They } did not play ... didn't play ...	Did } I play ? he play ? she play ? it play ? you play ? we play ? they play ?

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. They (**go** - are going - goes - **went**) to the park yesterday.
2. Soha (**cleans** - cleaning - cleaned - **will clean**) her room last evening.
3. My father (**gives** - gave - giving - **give**) me his pen because I lost mine.
4. I didn't (**write** - writing - writes - **wrote**) a letter to my friend yesterday.
5. He (**thanked** - thank - are think - **thinks**) his teacher for what he did for him.
6. Her father (**drives** - drove - driving - **drive**) them to Alex last week.
7. They (**lives** - living - lived - **are living**) in Tanta five years ago.
8. What did she (**buys** - buying - buy - **bought**) yesterday?
9. We all (**watching** - watches - watch - **watched**) the match last evening.
10. Mona (**helps** - is helping - helped - **helping**) her mother last Friday.

8 Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

1. I (**run**) home with my friend.
2. He (**climb**) the tree over there.
3. They (**not play**) basketball last Thursday.
4. We (**have**) lunch in a restaurant.
5. It (**start**) to rain at ten o'clock.

Revision

6. She (not eat) her sandwiches.
7. Mohamed (enjoy) yesterday's film.
8. He (take) the children to the park.
9. Ahmed (drink) his milk?
10. I (listen) to the news on the radio.

9 Change the following sentences into negative:

1. They enjoyed the trip.

▶ They didn't enjoy the trip.

2. We ate lunch at two.



3. They sang a beautiful song.



4. He left home early.



5. Dina fell off her bike.



6. The baby cried a lot.



7. We arrived at school late.



8. The teacher asked me a question.



9. I wanted to go to bed early.



10. They won the last match.



10 Change the following sentences into questions:

1. He walked to school this morning.

▶ Did he walk to school this morning?

2. We learned a new rule.



3. She did all the housework.

▶

4. Mai drew a nice picture.

▶

5. The sun shone at six o'clock.

▶

6. Tamer knew the answer.

▶

7. I had my lunch at school.

▶

8. He came late for school.

▶

9. It rained yesterday.

▶

10. Bell invented the telephone.

▶

Imperative

الأمر

تبدأ جملة الأمر بالفعل مباشرة دون فاعل، ويكون الفعل مُثْبِتًا في حالة الأمر ومنفياً في حالة النهي.

▶ **Open** your book.

▶ **Don't eat** in the class.

11 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Stand - Stood - Stands - Standing) up, please.

2. (Looks - Looking - Looked - Look) at the board.

3. Don't (comes - come - came - coming) to school late.

4. Don't (shouted - shout - shouting - shouts) in class.

5. (Eats - Ate - Eating - Eat) all your sandwiches.

6. (Goes - Going - Gone - Go) to bed early.

7. (Don't - Isn't - Doesn't - Aren't) play football at home.

Revision

8. (Don't - Do - Did - Doesn't) your homework every day.
9. (Don't - Did - Doesn't - Do) speak loudly.
10. Don't (walk - walks - walked - walking) on the grass.

(a - an)

تُستخدم (a) قبل الكلمات التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p,) بينما تُستخدم (an) قبل الكلمات التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك (q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z, a, e, i, o, u).

- ▶ a book ▶ a pencil ▶ a girl ▶ a doll ▶ a toy
▶ an apple ▶ an egg ▶ an orange ▶ an insect ▶ an umbrella

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. It's (a - an) yellow bag.
2. I have (a - an) toy train.
3. There's (a - an) egg in the fridge.
4. I eat (a - an) apple every day.
5. This is (a - an) green board.
6. (A - An) owl has strong eyes.
7. (A - An) elephant is a big animal.
8. There's (a - an) insect on the floor.
9. It's (a - an) green and yellow rubber.
10. Amal has (a - an) box of colors.
11. It's (a - an) orange and yellow doll.
12. It's (a - an) red and orange bag.
13. She is carrying (a - an) umbrella.
14. I have (a - an) good idea.
15. This is (a - an) new bike.
16. Is it (a - an) zebra?

17. I have (a - an) nice white cat.
18. He's (a - an) clown. He's happy.
19. He has (a - an) little house.
20. There's (a - an) man in the house.

13 Complete the following sentences using: a - an

1. Ahmed is good boy.
2. elephant has long nose.
3. bird has two legs.
4. There's apple in the fridge.
5. hat is on his head.
6. This is white telephone.
7. There's small bed in the room.
8. She's carrying school bag.
9. I have poster in my room.
10. She has umbrella.
11. She has orange blouse.
12. I eat egg sandwich for breakfast.
13. There is apple on the table.
14. There is red apple in the fridge.
15. There's insect in the science lab.
16. I have orange after lunch.
17. He has uncle. His name is Hamdy.
18. She has aunt, but I have two.
19. Mariam is nice girl.
20. Hosam has friend. His name is Islam.



Unit 1

The Five Senses

الحواس الخمس

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Talk about why our senses (like seeing, hearing, smelling) are important.
- Act out conversations about good habits.
- Show a project about eating well.



Listening

- Learn and understand words about the five senses.
- Listen to a conversation and answer questions about it.
- Listen and fill in words that have long vowel sounds, like the "ee" in "feed".



Reading

- Read about good habits.
- Read a story and figure out where and when it takes place, and who the people are.
- Read and put daily events in the correct order using words like "first", "next", etc.



Writing

- Finish sentences using simple present tense verbs (like "he walks," "she eats").
- Write about a daily routine using words that show order.
- Make a presentation about eating healthy.

Lesson 1

What Are the Five Senses?

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



1. The sense of taste

حاسة التذوق



taste (v.)

يتذوق



tongue

لسان



delicious food

طعام لذيذ



drink (n.)

مشروب

2. The sense of sight

حاسة البصر



see

يرى



eyes

عينان



colors

ألوان



shapes

أشكال

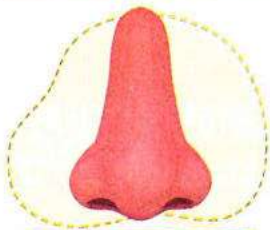
3. The sense of smell

حاسة الشم



smell (v.)

يشم



nose

أنف



flower

زهرة



smoke

دخان

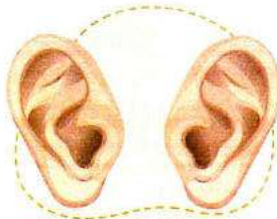
4. The sense of hearing

حاسة السمع



hear

يسمع



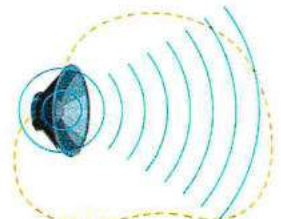
ears

أذان



music

موسيقى



voices

أصوات

5. The sense of touch

حاسة اللمس



touch (v.)

يلمس



hands

أيدي



soft

ناعم - طري



hard

خشن - صلب

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

amazing

مدهش - رائع

singing

غناء - تغريد

birds

طيور

the world

العالم

school

مدرسة

understand

يفهم

butterflies

فراشات

safe

آمن

colorful

ملون

around

حول

fire

نار

excellent!

ممتاز

garden

حديقة

huge

ضخم

Prepositions حروف الجر

learn about	يتعلّم عن	for example	على سبيل المثال
the world around us	العالم من حولنا	sense of hearing	حاسة السمع
in the school garden	في حديقة المدرسة		

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

What a beautiful day!	يا له من يوم جميل!	For example,	على سبيل المثال
What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟	Look around you.	انظر من حولك
That's a great question!	هذا سؤال رائع!	Can you give me?	هل يمكنك إعطائي.....؟
Stay safe.	ابق آمنًا / حافظ على سلامتك	That's right!	هذا صحيح!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
help	يساعد	helped		taste	يتذوق	tasted	
learn	يتعلم	learned		stay	يبقى	stayed	
listen	يستمع	listened		touch	يلمس	touched	
smell	يشم	smelled		use	يستخدم	used	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
hear	يسمع	heard		see	يرى	saw	
know	يعرف	knew		understand	يفهم	understood	

Listen and read



Ms. Mona and the students are talking about the five senses.



Ms. Mona : Good morning, children! **What a beautiful** day in the school garden.

Sami : Good morning, Ms. Mona! What will we learn today?

Ms. Mona : Today, we'll learn about our amazing **senses**.

Salma : What are senses, Ms. Mona?

Ms. Mona : Senses help us **understand** the world around us - like **seeing, hearing, and smelling**.

Sami : **I can hear** birds singing!

Ms. Mona : Yes! That's your sense of hearing. **What else** can we use?

Salma : I can smell the flowers and **see** the colorful butterflies!

Ms. Mona : **Excellent**, Salma! Those are your senses of smelling and seeing. Senses also help us **stay safe**.

Sami : Ms. Mona, how do our senses help us stay safe?

Ms. Mona : **That's a great question**, Sami! **For example**, if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

الأستاذة منى والطلاب يتحدثون عن الحواس الخمس.

الأستاذة منى : صباح الخير يا أطفال! يا له من يوم جميل في حديقة المدرسة.

سامي : صباح الخير يا أستاذة منى! ماذا سنتعلم اليوم؟

الأستاذة منى : سنتعلم اليوم عن حواسنا المدهشة.

سلمي : ما هي الحواس يا أستاذة منى؟

الأستاذة منى : الحواس تساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا - مثل الرؤية، والسمع، والشم.

سامي : أستطيع سماع الطيور وهي تغني!

الأستاذة منى : نعم! هذه هي حاسة السمع لديك. ما الحواس الأخرى التي يمكننا استخدامها؟

سلمى : أستطيع أن أشم الزهور وأرى الفراشات الملونة!
الأستاذة منى : ممتازة يا سلمى! هاتان هما حاستا الشم والبصر لديك. الحواس تساعدنا أيضًا على البقاء آمنين.

سامي : أستاذة منى، كيف تساعدنا حواسنا على البقاء آمنين؟
الأستاذة منى : هذا سؤال رائع يا سامي! على سبيل المثال، إذا شممت رائحة دخان، نعرف أن هناك نارًا.



Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

Talk about the five senses: تكلم عن الحواس الخمسة

I can taste with my tongue.

أستطيع أن أتذوق بلساني.

I can see with my eyes.

أستطيع أن أرى بعيني.

I can hear with my ears.

أستطيع أن أسمع بأذني.

I can touch with my hands.

أستطيع أن ألمس بيدي.

I can smell with my nose.

أستطيع أن أشم بأنفي.

Notice:



can + base verb

لاحظ أن **can** يأتي بعدها أصل الفعل

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

understand – senses – garden – touch

Our senses help us discover new things every day. The children are in the school ① on a sunny day. Ms. Mona teaches them about the five ② : sight, hearing, smell, taste, and ③ Sami hears birds singing, and Salma sees butterflies and smells flowers. Ms. Mona explains that senses help us ④ the world and keep us safe.

Unit 7

2 Match the sense to the organ:

'A'

1. Sight
2. Hearing
3. Smell
4. Taste
5. Touch

'B'

- a) tongue
- b) skin/hands
- c) nose
- d) ears
- e) eyes

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our five senses help us understand and explore the world around us. These senses are sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch. Each one gives us important information. We use our eyes to see things like colors and shapes. Our ears help us hear music or voices. With our nose, we can smell flowers or food. Our tongue lets us taste sweet or sour flavors, and our skin helps us feel if something is hot, cold, or soft. Senses are also important for safety. For example, if we touch something very hot, we quickly pull away to avoid getting hurt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our five senses help us and explore the world around us.
a) build b) smoke c) understand d) teach
2. Senses are also important for
a) safety b) money c) noise d) smooth

B Answer the following questions:

3. Can you name the five senses? Write them.

.....

4. Why are our senses important for safety?

.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct sense verb:

1. I can the rainbow with my eyes.
2. I can the baby crying with my ears.
3. I can the pizza with my tongue.
4. I can the puppy's fur with my hands.
5. I can the perfume with my nose.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I taste with my
 a) eyes b) tongue c) nose d) ears
2. I with my nose.
 a) see b) hear c) smell d) touch
3. She can the colorful butterflies.
 a) taste b) hear c) see d) smell
4. We can birds singing.
 a) hear b) touch c) taste d) understand
5. Ms. Mona teaches us about the five we have.
 a) flowers b) butterflies c) senses d) colors
6. You can see and smell
 a) birds b) flowers c) butterflies d) stars
7. Senses help us
 a) draw better b) sleep more c) run faster d) stay safe
8. If we smell smoke, we know there's a
 a) rain b) fire c) wind d) storm
9. We use our to hear.
 a) ears b) hands c) eyes d) nose
10. We use our to see colors and shapes.
 a) hands b) tongue c) eyes d) ears

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. birds - I - the - hear - can - singing!

..... !

2. I - smell - can - flowers - the - beautiful.

..... .

3. do - our - senses - How - safe - help - stay - us?

..... ?

4. smell - If - smoke, - we - a - there's - fire.

..... .

5. learn - We'll - senses - about - our - amazing.

..... .

7 Punctuate the following:

1. ms. mona is our teacher.

.....

2. what a beautiful day in the school garden

.....

3. sami is a good student

.....

4. we'll learn about our amazing senses

.....

5. senses help us understand the world

.....

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"How I use my five senses in my classroom"



▶ **What can you (see/hear/smell/touch) in your classroom?**

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

Healthy Habits

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



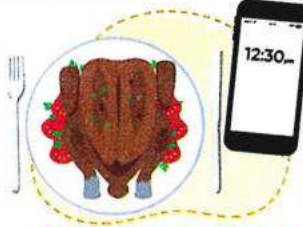
Meals & Food

الوجبات والطعام



breakfast

الطُفُور



lunch

الغدا



dinner

العشاء



eggs

بيض



juice

عصير



fruits

فواكه



brown bread

خبز أسمر



sweets

حلوى



vegetables

خضراوات

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

School Life: الحياة المدرسية

break time

وقت الفُسحة

friends

أصدقاء

classes

حصص

homework

واجب

Unit 7

Health & Body: الصحة والجسم

energy	طاقة	strong	قوي
sharp mind	ذهن مستيقظ - عقل نشيط	vitamins	فيتامينات

Prepositions حروف الجر

at 6:00 a.m.	في الساعة 6 صباحاً	for breakfast	على الفطور
at school	في المدرسة	in the evening	في المساء
between classes	بين الحصص	in the morning	في الصباح
during break time	خلال وقت القُسعة	for 9 hours	لمدة 9 ساعات
with her friends	مع أصدقائها		

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

do exercises	تقوم بتمارين	stay healthy	تبقى بصحة جيدة
enjoys her day	تستمتع بيومها	feel good	تشعر بشعور جيد
does her homework	تقوم بواجبها المنزلي	10-year-old girl	فتاة تبلغ من العمر 10 سنوات

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
brush	يغسل بفرشاة	brushed		follow	يتبع	followed	
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed		play	يلعب	played	
exercise	يتمرن	exercised		wash	يغسل	washed	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
do	يفعل	did		go	يذهب	went	
drink	يشرب	drank		grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	
eat	يأكل	ate		take	يأخذ	took	
give	يعطي	gave		wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	



Read and learn

My Healthy Day



Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good **habits** every day to stay strong and healthy.

In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She **brushes** her teeth and washes her face. Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

For **breakfast**, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her **energy** for the day.

At school, Sarah drinks plenty of water between classes. She plays sports with her friends during break time.

In the afternoon, Sarah does her homework first. After that, she helps her mother in the garden. They grow fresh vegetables together.

For **dinner**, Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits. These give her important vitamins. She doesn't eat too many sweets.

In the evening, Sarah takes a shower and brushes her teeth again. She **goes to bed early** at 8:30 p.m. She sleeps for 9 hours every night.

Getting enough **sleep** helps her body stay healthy and her **mind** stay **sharp**. Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school. She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day!

يومي الصحي

سارة فتاة ذات صحة جيدة تبلغ من العمر 10 سنوات. إنها تتبّع عادات جيدة كل يوم لتبقى قوية وبصحة جيدة.

في الصباح، تستيقظ سارة مبكرًا في الساعة السادسة صباحًا. وتغسل أسنانها بالفرشاة وتغسل وجهها. بعد ذلك، تقوم ببعض التمارين البسيطة في الحديقة.

في وجبة الفطور، تأكل سارة طعامًا صحيًا. تشرب عصير البرتقال وتأكل البيض والخبز الأسمر. هذه الأطعمة تعطيها طاقة لبقية اليوم.

في المدرسة، تشرب سارة الكثير من الماء بين الحصص. وتلعب الرياضة مع أصدقائها خلال وقت الفسحة.

في فترة ما بعد الظهر، تقوم سارة بواجبها المنزلي أولاً. ثم تساعد والدتها في الحديقة. إنهما تزرعان الخضروات الطازجة معًا.

في العشاء، تأكل سارة الكثير من الخضراوات والفواكه. هذه الأطعمة تمنحها الفيتامينات المهمة. وهي لا تأكل الكثير من الحلويات.

في المساء، تستحم سارة وتغسل أسنانها بالفرشاة مرة أخرى. إنها تذهب إلى السرير مبكرًا في الساعة 8:30 مساءً. وتنام لمدة 9 ساعات كل ليلة.

الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم يساعد جسدها على البقاء بصحة جيدة، وذهنها على البقاء متيقظًا. عادات سارة الصحية تساعد على الشعور بشعور جيد والنجاح في المدرسة. إن لديها الكثير من الطاقة لتتعلم، وتلعب، وتستمتع بيومها!

GRAMMAR STUDY



Present Simple

المضارع البسيط



Study this example situation:

▶ I like tea.

◀ أنا أحب الشاي.

▶ I drink tea every morning.

◀ أنا أشرب الشاي كل صباح.

○ This is a **habit** or **routine**.

○ عادة - روتين.

○ We use the present simple to talk about things daily habits, routines, and in general.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين اليومي، والأشياء بشكل عام.

1. **Facts** → Lions eat meat. (حقائق) الأسود تأكل اللحم.

2. **Habits - repeated actions** → I play every day. (عادات - أشياء متكررة الحدوث) ألعب كل يوم.

Affirmative statements in the present simple:

الجملة المثبتة في زمن المضارع البسيط:

Subject	Verb
I	
We	
They	sleep at 9 o'clock.
You	
Ali and Omar	

Subject	Verb
He	
She	
It	sleeps at 9 o'clock.
Ali	

Spelling rules with (He-She-It):

قواعد كتابة الفعل مع (He - She - It)

- We add (s) to the verb in the present simple when the subject is **he, she, or it**. **He - She - It** نضيف (s) للفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط عندما يكون الفاعل: **He - She - It**.

Example:

▶ He plays football every day.

- Add (es) when the verb ends in (s - sh - ch - o - x).

أضف "es" عندما ينتهي الفعل بأحد الحروف التالية (s - sh - ch - o - x).

Examples:

▶ I pass → He passes ▶ I wash → He washes
▶ I watch → She watches ▶ I go → It goes
▶ I fix → He fixes

- If the verb ends in a consonant + y, we change (y) to (ies).

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن متبوعًا بالحرف "y"، فإن النهاية "y" تتحول إلى "ies".

Examples:

▶ I study → She studies ▶ I try → she tries

1 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets:

1. The sun (rise) in the east.
2. Birds (sing) in the morning.
3. Water (boil) at 100 degrees Celsius.
4. My brother (watch) TV every evening.
5. Cats (like) to sleep a lot.
6. A doctor (help) sick people.
7. We (eat) dinner at 7:00 p.m.
8. She (go) to the gym three times a week.
9. He (play) football on Saturdays.
10. Bees (make) honey.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sisters English at school.
 a) study b) studies c) studying d) studys
2. He his homework quickly.
 a) finish b) finishes c) finishing d) finishes
3. The train at 8:00 a.m. every day.
 a) leave b) leaves c) leaved d) leaving
4. She her car on Sundays.
 a) wash b) washs c) washes d) washing
5. It a lot in winter here.
 a) rain b) raines c) rains d) raining
6. My dad things around the house.
 a) fix b) fixs c) fixes d) fixing
7. A baker bread.
 a) bake b) bakes c) bakery d) baking
8. My dogs always at strangers.
 a) park b) bark c) barks d) barking

9. The teachers us new things.
 a) teaches b) teach c) teaches d) teaching
10. He never new food.
 a) try b) trys c) tries d) trying

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stay healthy – give her energy – my healthy day – healthy food

Sarah follows good habits every day to stay strong. She eats ① in the morning. She does some simple exercises to ② These healthy habits ③ and help her do well at school. She always says, "This is ④"! After playing and learning, she begins to feel good.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl who follows good daily habits. She wakes up early, exercises, and eats healthy meals like eggs, brown bread, fruits, and vegetables. At school, she drinks water, plays with friends, and does her homework in the afternoon. She helps her mother in the garden and goes to bed early, getting enough sleep to stay strong and **sharp**. Her healthy lifestyle gives her energy and helps her do well at school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sarah gets energy from
 a) sweets and soda b) fruits and vegetables
 c) chips and candy d) fast food
2. The word "**sharp**" in the text means
 a) smart b) angry c) lazy d) sleepy

B Answer the following questions:

3. What does Sarah do to stay healthy in the morning?

4. Why does Sarah get enough sleep?

▶

5

Fill in with the correct preposition:

for - in - at - between - during

1. Sarah wakes up 6:00 a.m.
2. She plays with her friends break time.
3. She sleeps 9 hours.
4. Sarah eats fruits and vegetables the evening.
5. She studies classes.

6

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. every - brushes - her - teeth - **She** - morning.
▶
2. **For** - Sarah - eats - healthy - breakfast, - food.
▶
3. classes - **Sarah** - plenty - of - drinks - water - between.
▶
4. **In** - the - Sarah - afternoon, - her - homework - does.
▶
5. **Why** - food - Sarah - does - eat - healthy?
▶ ?

7

Punctuate the following:

1. do you think you're healthy, adam?
▶
2. My friend nader lives in giza.
▶
3. My cousin judy and I play video games on tuesday.
▶
4. Does sarah eat healthy food
▶
5. he does exercises in the morning
▶

Lesson 3

Story Time: Goha's Great Meal

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية


Goha's Great Meal
 وجبة جحا الرائعة
**market**

سوق

**restaurant**

مطعم

**soup**

حساء (شورية)

**coins**

عملات معدنية

**hungry**

جائع

**owner**

مالك - صاحب

**greedy**

طماع - جشع

**laugh**

يضحك

**jingling**

رنين - جلجلة (صوت العملات)

**yummy**

لذيذ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

answer (n.)

إجابة

breath (n.)

نَفَس

clever

ذكي

free

مجاني

less

أقل

wonderful

رائع

Unit 7

Prepositions حروف الجر

walking through the market

يمشي عبر السوق

sat outside the restaurant

جَلَسَ خارج المطعم

shared with others

شاركه مع الآخرين

shook them in his hand

هزّها في يده

coming from a restaurant's window

يأتي من نافذة المطعم

a few coins from his pocket

بضع عملات من جيبه

laughed at Goha's clever answer

ضحك على إجابة جحا الذكية

the smell of your delicious soup

رائحة حسائك اللذيذ

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

one morning

ذات صباح

You must pay for it.

يجب أن تدفع ثمنه.

took a deep breath

أخذ نفسًا عميقًا

thought for a moment

فكّر للحظة

What are you doing? ماذا تفعل؟

Come inside.

ادخل.

I'm enjoying the smell.

أنا أستمع بالرائحة.

Let's share.

دعنا نتشارك.

for free

مجانًا

Tastes better

مذاقه أفضل

took out (coins)

أخرج (عملات معدنية)

Take the sound of my coins.

خذ صوت عملاتي المعدنية.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

answer

يجيب

Past

answered

shared

stopped

closed

Present

ask

walk

want

laugh

يسأل

يمشي

يريد

يضحك

Past

asked

walked

wanted

laughed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
feel	يشعر	felt		make	يُصنع - يُحدث	made	
pay	يدفع	paid		say	يقول	said	
sit	يجلس	sat		think	يفكر	thought	
buy	يشترى	bought		shake	يهزّ - يَرّج	shook	

Definitions تعريفات

Owner مالك - صاحب	: The person who has something الشخص الذي يملك شيئاً
Jingling رنين - جلبة (صوت رنان)	: A light ringing sound صوت رنين خفيف
Share يشارك - يتقاسم	: To let others have a part of what you have تسمح للآخرين بمشاركة ما لديك
Hungry جائع	: Wanting to eat الرغبة في تناول الطعام
Greedy جشع - طماع	: Wanting more than you need الرغبة في أكثر مما تحتاج (الطمع)
The characters الشخصيات	: The people and animals in a story الأشخاص والحيوانات في القصة
The setting الإعداد (المكان والزمان)	: The time and place of a story زمان ومكان القصة

Listen and read



Goha's Great Meal

One morning, Goha was walking through the **market**. He was very **hungry**, but didn't have enough money to buy food. Suddenly, he smelled something wonderful. The yummy smell was coming from a restaurant's window. Goha stopped and sat outside the **restaurant**. He closed his eyes and took a deep breath.



"Ah", he said. "This wonderful smell makes me feel less hungry!" The restaurant **owner** saw Goha and asked, "What are you doing?"

Goha said, "I'm enjoying the smell of your delicious soup."

The owner was **greedy**. He said, "You can't smell the soup for free! You must pay for it!"

Goha thought for a moment. Then he took out a few **coins** from his pocket. He shook them in his hand, and they made a **jingling** sound.

"Here", said Goha. "If you want money for the smell of your **soup**, then you can take the sound of my coins."

The owner laughed at Goha's **clever** answer. "Come inside," he said. "Let's **share** this soup." Good food tastes better when shared with others!

وجبة جحا الرائعة

ذات صباح، كان جحا يسير في السوق. لقد كان جائعًا جدًا، لكن لم يكن لديه ما يكفي من المال لشراء الطعام. فجأة، شمّ شيئًا رائعًا. كانت الرائحة الشهية تأتي من نافذة مطعم. توقف جحا وجلس خارج المطعم. أغمض عينيه وأخذ نفسًا عميقًا.

قال: "آه، هذه الرائحة الرائعة تجعلني أشعر بجوع أقل!"

رأى صاحب المطعم جحا وسأله: "ماذا تفعل؟"

قال جحا: "أنا أستمتع برائحة حسائك اللذيذ."

كان صاحب المطعم جشعًا. فقال: "لا يمكنك شم الحساء مجانًا! يجب أن تدفع ثمن ذلك!" فكر جحا للحظة. ثم أخرج بعض العملات المعدنية من جيبه. وهزها في يده، فأصدرت صوتًا رائعًا.

قال جحا: "تفضل. إذا أردت المال مقابل رائحة حسائك، فيمكنك أن تأخذ صوت عملاتي."

ضحك صاحب المطعم على جواب جحا الذكي. وقال له: "تعال إلى الداخل، لتتقاسم هذا الحساء."

الطعام اللذيذ يكون طعمه أطيب عندما يتم مشاركته مع الآخرين!

Pronunciation



Short and Long Vowels

- **Short vowel sounds** are pronounced quickly and not pronounced as their letter name, like the "a" in "hat".

تُنطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة بسرعة، ولا تُنطق كما يُنطق اسم الحرف نفسه، مثل حرف "a" في كلمة "hat".

- **Long vowel sounds** are pronounced the same way as their letter name like the "a" in "plate".

تُنطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة الطويلة بنفس طريقة نطق اسم الحرف، مثل حرف "a" في كلمة "plate".

- Magic "e" is a common phonics rule in English.

قاعدة "e" السحرية هي قاعدة صوتيات شائعة في اللغة الإنجليزية.

- The "silent e" makes the vowel before it say its long sound (its name).

حرف "e" الصامت يجعل حرف العلة الذي يسبقه ينطق بصوته الطويل (اسمه).

Examples:

Short vowel sounds



cap



kit



cub



Long vowel sounds



cape



kite



cube

Short vowel sounds



hat



pen



pot

Long vowel sounds



plate



feed



home

Listen and read



- ▶ Hany went **home** and changed into his best clothes.
- ▶ The children **feed** their cat in the morning.
- ▶ I washed the **plates** after dinner.

Notice:



Double vowels usually have long sounds.

الحروف المتحركة المزدوجة عادةً ما يكون لها أصوات طويلة.

Examples:

“ee” in feed

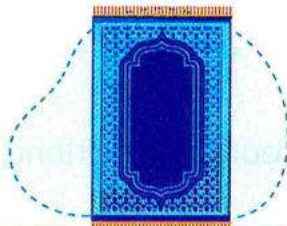
“oo” in food

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Complete with "at" or "ate":



h _____



m _____



d _____



g _____



f _____

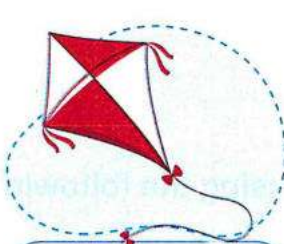


h _____

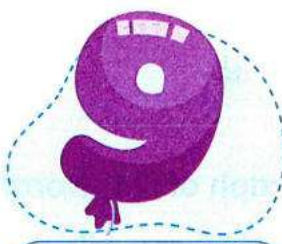
2 Complete with "it" or "ite":



f _____



k _____



n _____



s _____

3 Read and complete the summary with the words in the box:



Student's Book

smell - coins - restaurant - share

One day, Goha was hungry but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a ① He sat outside, enjoying the ② of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his ③ The owner laughed and invited him in to ④ the soup.

4

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. outside - restaurant - the - Goha - Why - did - sit?

▶ ?

2. He - something - smelled - wonderful - restaurant - from - a.

▶

3. share - Do - food - you - your - with - friends?

▶ ?

4. Goha - the - was - through - walking - market.

▶

5

Punctuate the following:

1. goha took out a few coins from his pocket

▶

2. Let s share this soup

▶

3. i can t pay for the soup.

▶

4. do you have money

▶

6

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Sharing with others"

▶ food - books - toys

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

Writing: Sequence Words &
Project: A Presentation

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



First

أولاً



have a shower

Next

التالي



have breakfast

Sequence Words

كلمات (ظروف)
الترتيب

Finally

أخيراً



go to school

Then

ثم



get dressed

After that

بعد ذلك



take your bag

Daily Routine روتين يومي

I wake up early.

أنا أستيقظ مبكراً.

I get dressed for school.

أنا أرتدي ملابس لي لأذهب للمدرسة.

I have a healthy breakfast.

أنا أتناول فطوراً صحياً.

I go to school.

أنا أذهب للمدرسة.

I brush my teeth.

أنا أغسل أسناني بالفرشاة.

I have lunch with my family.

أنا أتناول الغداء مع عائلتي.

I do my homework.

أنا أقوم بواجباتي المنزلية.

I play sports.

أنا أمارس الرياضة.

I take a shower.

أنا أستحم.

I go to bed early.

أنا أنام مبكراً.

Unit 1

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

important	مهم	same	نفس - مماثل
including	بما في ذلك	snack	وجبة خفيفة
daily	يومي	hour	ساعة من الوقت
day	يوم		

Prepositions حروف الجر

with my family	مع عائلتي	for one hour	لساعة واحدة
-----------------------	-----------	---------------------	-------------

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

I follow the same routine. أنا أتبع نفس الروتين.	keep me healthy يبقيني بصحة جيدة
I do my homework. أنا أقوم بواجباتي المدرسية.	Let me tell you about صلي أخبرك عن
healthy life حياه صحية	healthy habits عادات صحية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stay يبقى - يظل	stayed	study يدرس	studied

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
get يحصل - يصبح	got	let يدع	let
keep يحافظ - يبقى	kept	tell يخبر	told
have يتناول	had	sleep ينام	slept



Think and answer

My Healthy Life



Having a daily routine is important. Let me tell you about my healthy habits and how they help me stay strong.

Every day, I follow the same routine. **First**, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. **Next**, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.



Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. During break time, I eat a healthy snack and drink water. After school, I have lunch with my family.

After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. In the evening, I take a shower and have dinner. **Finally**, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.

حياتي الصحية

يُعد الروتين اليومي أمرًا مهمًا. دعوني أخبركم عن عاداتي الصحية وكيف تساعدني على البقاء قويًا. كل يوم، أتبع نفس الروتين. أولاً، أستيقظ مبكرًا في الساعة 6:00 صباحًا وأغسل أسناني بالفرشاة. أغسل وجهي وأرتدي ملابس لي للذهاب للمدرسة. بعد ذلك، أتناول فطورًا صحيًا، يشمل الحليب والفواكه.

ثم، أذهب إلى المدرسة، حيث أدرس وألعب مع أصدقائي. خلال وقت الفسحة، أتناول وجبة خفيفة صحية وأشرب الماء. بعد المدرسة، أتناول الغداء مع عائلتي.

بعد ذلك، أقوم بواجبي المنزلي ثم أمارس الرياضة لمدة ساعة. في المساء، أستحم وأتناول العشاء. وأخيرًا، أذهب إلى الفراش في الساعة 9:00 مساءً لأن النوم المبكر يحافظ على صحتي.



Language Notes:

- Sequence words (adverbs) show the order of actions or events, or steps in a process. They tell us what happens at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end. They help make your writing or speech clear and easy to follow.
- كلمات (ظروف) الترتيب تُظهر ترتيب الأفعال أو الأحداث، أو خطوات في عملية ما. إنها تخبرنا بما يحدث في البداية، وفي المنتصف، وفي النهاية. وهي تساعد في جعل كتابتك أو حديثك واضحًا وسهل المتابعة.

1 First (Start) (البداية) أولاً

▶ To make a cake, **first**, mix the flour and sugar.

لتحضير كعكة، أولاً، اخلط الدقيق والسكر.

2 Next بعدها

▶ **Next**, add the eggs one by one.

بعدها، أضف البيض واحدة تلو الأخرى.

3 Then ثم

▶ Beat the mixture well. **Then**, pour it into the baking pan.

اخفق الخليط جيدًا. ثم، اسكبه في صينية الخبز.

4 After that بعد ذلك

▶ Bake the cake for 30 minutes. **After that**, let it cool completely.

اخبز الكعكة لمدة 30 دقيقة. بعد ذلك، اتركها لتبرد تمامًا.

5 Finally (End) أخيرًا (النهاية)

▶ **Finally**, decorate the cake.

أخيرًا، زين الكعكة.



Project

- Prepare a presentation about healthy eating habits. Share your presentation with the class.

أعد عرضًا تقديميًا عن عادات الأكل الصحية. شارك عرضك التقديمي مع الفصل.



Healthy Eating Habits By: Marwa Galal



Fruits are yummy and healthy.
الفواكه لذيذة وصحية.



Vegetables are good for you.
الخضراوات جيدة لصحتك.



Candy and chips are not good for you.
الحلوى وشرائح البطاطس ليست جيدة لصحتك



Drink water.
اشرب الماء.



Play and exercise.
العب وتمرن.



Be healthy and happy.
كن بصحة جيدة وسعيدًا.

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Fill in with your daily routine after school day:

First :

Next :

Then :

After that :

After school :

Finally :

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I eat my at 7:00 a.m. every morning.

- a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) fruit

2. Brushing your teeth twice a day keeps them

- a) same b) strong c) early d) weak

3. After school, I take a to relax and play.

- a) lunch b) life c) hour d) break

Unit 1

4. My family eats together at 8:00 p.m.
 a) fruit b) breakfast c) dinner d) snack
5. A healthy includes exercise and good food.
 a) shopping b) sleep c) homework d) life
6. I take a to eat at school.
 a) dinner b) lunch c) snack d) breakfast
7. My routine helps me stay organized.
 a) bad b) lazy c) weak d) daily
8. Eating is good for your health.
 a) fruit b) chocolate c) french fries d) chips
9. I go to bed to wake up refreshed.
 a) same b) strong c) early d) daily
10. Good like washing hands keep illness away.
 a) habits b) life c) day d) evening

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

break time - important - during - snack

Every day, I follow my morning routine. It's ① to take care of my health. I make sure to eat a healthy ② and drink water ③ my breakfast. I also take a short ④ to relax and recharge. In the evening, I enjoy including my favorite activities, like reading or exercising. This helps me have a balanced lifestyle.

4

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. daily - I - follow - routine - the - same.

▶

2. I - a shower - have - in - the - morning - every - day.

▶

3. to - break time - Heba - has - a - relax.

▶

4. teeth - brushes - Nour - her - before - bedtime - every - night.

5. important - It - to - stay - healthy - and - active - is.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. do you think you're healthy, adam?

2. My friend nader lives in giza.

3. My cousin judy and I play video games on tuesday.

6 Read and order the events using sequence words: Student's Book

First - Next - Then - After that - Finally - After school

- ①, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth.
- ②, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends.
- ③, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.
- ④, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.
- ⑤, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour.
- ⑥, I have lunch with my family.

7 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"How can you stay healthy?"

▶ **daily routine - important - health - snack - shower**

Review on Unit 1

Main Vocabulary

senses	حواس	strong	قوي
hear	يسمع	vitamins	فيتامينات
see	يرى	market	سوق
smell	يشم - الشم	restaurant	مطعم
taste	يتذوق - التذوق	soup	حساء - شوربة
touch	يلمس - اللمس	coins	عملات معدنية
brown bread	خبز أسمر	hungry	جائع
breakfast	فطور	owner	مالك - صاحب
dinner	عشاء	greedy	طاقع
lunch	غداء	jingling	رنين - جلجلة
energy	طاقة	laugh	يضحك
sharp	حاد	yummy	لذيذ

Pronunciation

Short Vowels



hat



pen



pot

Long Vowels



plate



feed



home

Grammar Study

Affirmative statements in the present simple:

الجملة المثبتة في زمن المضارع البسيط:

Subject	Verb	
I		
We		
They	sleep	at 9 o'clock.
You		
Ali and Omar		

Subject	Verb	
He		
She		
It	sleeps	at 9 o'clock.
Ali		

Dictation:

market	يساعد
restaurant	يتعلّم
soup	يستمع
coins	يشم
hungry	يتذوق
owner	يبقى
greedy	يلمس
jingling	خبر أسمر
laugh	فطور
yummy	عشاء
hour	بيض
important	فواكه
including	عصير
daily	غداء
same	خلّوي
answer	خضراوات
breath	يسمع
clever	يعرف
free	يرى
wonderful	يفهم

Practice 1 on Unit 1

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. I wake up at (7:00 a.m. - 6:00 a.m. - 8:00 a.m.).
2. I (get dressed - go to school - brush my teeth) after I wake up.
3. I have (eggs and toast - milk and fruit - bread and cheese) for a healthy breakfast.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

healthy - wake - routine - dressed

- A** : What's your daily ① like?
- B** : Well, every day I follow the same one! First, I ② up at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth, then I wash my face and get ③ for school.
- A** : And after that?
- B** : Next, I have a ④ breakfast, usually with milk and fruit.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar wakes up at 7:00 a.m. and washes his face. For breakfast, he has a bowl of cereal with milk and a banana. He walks to school and loves learning new things in class. During break time, he eats a sandwich and plays football with his friends. After school, he goes to the library to read books for an hour. Then, he helps his dad in the garden. For dinner, they often have chicken and rice with lots of vegetables. Before bed, he takes a shower, brushes his teeth, and reads a story. He goes to bed at 9:00 p.m.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What does Omar eat for breakfast?

▶

2. What does Omar do before going to bed?

▶

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Omar plays

a) tennis b) basketball c) football d) volleyball

4. Omar goes to bed at

a) 9:00 a.m b) 8:00 p.m c) 9:00 p.m d) 10:00 p.m

5. After school, Omar goes to the

a) park b) library c) sports club d) supermarket

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. My cat (sleeps - sleeping - sleep) on the sofa.

2. They (likes - liking - like) to watch scary movies.

3. I use my (nose - ears - tongue) to smell.

4. Sarah does exercises in the (class - garden - library).

5. I taste (colors - flowers - food).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. practice - times - three - We - week - every.

▶

2. you - healthy - Do - are - think - you?

▶ ?

3. vegetables - We - eat - fruit - a lot of - and.

▶

4. they - do - for - What - have - breakfast?

▶ ?

5. wake - early - up - I - day - every.

▶

Practice ② on Unit ①

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Goha felt (**angry** - tired - hungry - sleepy) when he smelled the soup.
2. Goha smelled (**bread** - soup - meat - cake) coming from the restaurant.
3. The restaurant owner asked for (money for the smell - **a thank you** - a bowl of soup - help with cooking) .
4. Goha offered (**his shoes** - a story - the sound of his coins - his hat) as payment for the smell.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. I have a cold, so I can't (**feel** - taste - smell - hear) the flower.
2. Sarah does exercises in the (**room** - garden - school - library).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sports – starts – strong – homework

I follow a routine that helps me stay strong and happy. My healthy routine ① at 6 a.m. with brushing my teeth and having breakfast. At school, I study, play, and have a snack. After school, I enjoy family lunch, complete ②, and play ③ Evenings include a shower, dinner, and early bedtime at 9 p.m. This routine keeps me ④, active, and healthy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sarah wakes up at 6:00 a.m., brushes her teeth, washes her face, and exercises. For breakfast, she eats healthy foods like eggs and, brown bread and drinks orange juice. At school, she drinks water and plays sports. After school, she helps her mom grow vegetables and completes her homework. For dinner, she eats fruits and vegetables and doesn't eat too many sweets. In the evening, she showers, brushes her teeth, and goes to bed early at 9:00 p.m., sleeping for 9 hours. Her healthy lifestyle helps her stay fit, focused, and full of energy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sarah (**always** - too many - never - everyday) eats sweets.
2. Sarah sleeps for (six - **seven** - eight - nine) hours every night.

B Answer the following questions:

3. What time does Sarah wake up every morning? 
4. What does Sarah do after finishing her homework? 

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The children often (**plays**) in the park.
2. My sister (**like**) cake.
3. She can (**tastes**) delicious food.
4. Adel (**studys**) every day.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda was a noisy girl. ()
2. Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda. ()

B Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Wanda sit in the classroom? 
2. How many dresses did Wanda say she had at home? 

7 Punctuate the following:

1. does your brother have a daily routine 

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"How to prepare for school in the morning."

first - next - then - after - that - finally

.....

.....

.....



Unit 2

My Community

مجتمعي

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Talk about examples of things you can do to help your community
- Discuss problems in your community and suggest solutions
- Share stories about your community's history and traditions

Reading

- Read about how people help their community
- Read about problems in the community and their solutions
- Read about the traditions and festivals of Lower and Upper Egypt

Listening

- Listen to dialogues about helping the community and solving problems
- Practice listening to /f/ and /v/ sounds

Writing

- Write sentences about how you help your community
- Write a diary entry about your community's history
- Create a poster about a community problem and its solution

Lesson 1 Helping the Community

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

Helping the Community
مساعدة المجتمعhelp community
يساعد المجتمعclean trash
ينظف القمامةplant trees
يزرع أشجارfeed dogs
يطعم الكلابvolunteer at the park
يتطوع في المنتزه (الحديقة)collect bottles
يجمع الزجاجات

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

clothes

الملابس

cool

رائع - لطيف

ducks

بَطّ

great

عظيم - رائع

happy

سعيد

neighbors

جيران

nice

جميل - لطيف

old clothes

ملابس قديمة

streets

شوارع

Wow!

واو - رائع

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

That's cool!

هذا رائع!

I feel so happy!

أشعر بسعادة كبيرة!

You do a great job!

أنت تقوم بعمل رائع!

I collect old clothes.

أجمع الملابس القديمة.

We make our community great.

نحن نجعل مجتمعتنا رائعًا.

That's nice!

هذا جميل!

What about you?

ماذا عنك؟

That's great!

هذا عظيم!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned	need	يحتاج	needed	needed
collect	يجمع	collected	collected	plant	يزرع	planted	planted
help	يساعد	helped	helped	volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
do	يفعل	did	did	give	يعطي	gave	gave
feed	يطعم	fed	fed	make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made
feel	يشعر	felt	felt				



Listen and read

Helping Hands أيادٍ مساعدة

Amira and Adam are talking about how they help their community.



Amira : Hello, Adam! What do you do to **help** our **community**?

Adam : Hello, Amira! **I clean trash** from the streets with my friends every Saturday.

Amira : That's cool! Do you **plant trees**?



Adam : Yes, I do. I plant trees in the park.

Amira : That's nice! Do you do other things to help?

Adam : Yes! Sometimes **I feed the dogs and cats**. I feel so happy when I give them food!

Amira : Does your sister help too?

Adam : Yes, she does! She helps her **neighbors**, and she **volunteers** at the **community park**.

Amira : Wow, you both do a great job!

Adam : Thanks! What about you? How do you help?

Amira : I collect **old clothes** and give them to people who need them.

Adam : That's great! When we all help, we make our community great.

أميرة وآدم يتحدثان عن كيفية مساعدتهما لمجتمعهما.

أميرة : مرحبًا يا آدم! ماذا تفعل لمساعدة مجتمعنا؟

آدم : مرحبًا يا أميرة! أنا أنظف القمامة من الشوارع مع أصدقائي كل يوم سبت.

أميرة : هذا رائع! هل تزرع الأشجار؟

آدم : نعم، أفعل. أنا أزرع الأشجار في الحديقة.

أميرة : هذا جميل! هل تفعل أشياء أخرى للمساعدة؟

آدم : نعم! أحيانًا أطعم الكلاب والقطط. أشعر بسعادة كبيرة عندما أعطيهم الطعام!

أميرة : هل تقوم أختك بالمساعدة أيضًا؟

آدم : نعم، إنها تفعل! هي تساعد جيرانها، وتتطوع في حديقة المجتمع.

أميرة : واو! أتتما تقومان بعمل رائع!

آدم : شكرًا! ماذا عنك؟ كيف تساعدين؟

أميرة : أنا أجمع الملابس القديمة وأعطيها للأشخاص الذين يحتاجونها.

آدم : هذا عظيم! عندما نساعد جميعًا، نجعل مجتمعنا رائعًا.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali and Omar old clothes from people.

a) plant

b) feed

c) collect

d) feed

2. Mona at the community garden.

a) collects

b) gives

c) takes

d) volunteers

Unit 2

3. We flowers in our garden.
a) help b) clean c) plant d) eat
4. Uncle Sami dogs in our street.
a) collects b) volunteers c) eat d) feeds
5. When we all help, we make our great.
a) trash b) volunteers c) clothes d) community

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

plant - feed - collect - volunteer

Every Saturday, we go to the park to help. We ① to help in the park. We clean the streets and ② bottles. We ③ flowers and trees. We ④ the ducks. It is fun to help and make the park nice for everyone. We always leave the park looking beautiful.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Adam and Amira are great examples of community helpers. Every Saturday, Adam and his friends clean trash from the streets. He also plants trees in the park to make it beautiful. Besides that, Adam sometimes feeds dogs and cats, which makes him very happy. His sister also contributes by helping their neighbors and volunteering at the community park. Amira helps too, by collecting old clothes and giving them to people who need them. Together, they believe that when everyone helps, they can truly make their community a wonderful place.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adam feels very happy when he
a) cleans trash b) plants trees
c) feeds dogs and cats d) volunteers at the park

2. The person who collects old clothes to help people is
 a) Adam b) Adam's sister c) Amira d) Adam's friend

B Answer the following questions:

3. When do Adam and his friends clean the streets? ►
 4. Summarize the text in one sentence. ►

4 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets:

1. (Is) trees important to our community?
 2. Volunteers (be) very helpful.
 3. My friends (collects) bottles.
 4. We (feeds) cats and dogs.
 5. Which animals (does) Mom, Tarek, and Sara like?

5 Punctuate the following:

1. does tarek plant trees or not?
 ►
 2. i feed the dogs and cats
 ►
 3. That s cool! Do you plant trees
 ►
 4. mom, sara, and Tarek like animals.
 ►
 5. Wow you both do a great job
 ►

6 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"How can we help our community"

► plant - collect - help - volunteer

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



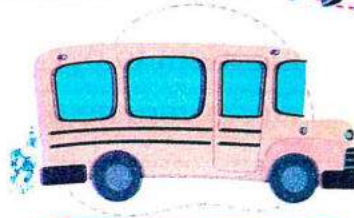
Community & Problems

المجتمع والمشكلات



road

طريق



school bus

حافلة المدرسة



traffic

ازدحام مروري - مرور



throw

يرمي



dirty

قذر - متسخ



ground

أرض



bins

صناديق (قمامة)



trash

قمامة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

anymore

بعد ذلك - بعد الآن

best

أفضل - أحسن

every day

كل يوم

everyone

الجميع - كل شخص

quickly

بسرعة

fix

يصلح

solve

يحل

move

يتحرك

everywhere	في كل مكان	especially	خاصةً
fewer	أقل	solutions	حلول
instead	بدلاً من ذلك		

Prepositions حروف الجر

especially near schools	خاصةً بالقرب من المدارس	talk about	يتكلم عن
on the roads	على الطرق	solution to	حل لـ

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

how to solve	كيف تحل	I think so.	أعتقد ذلك.
That's right!	هذا صحيح!	look dirty	يبدو قذراً - يبدو متسخاً
make a difference	يُحدث (يصنع) فرقاً		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
fix يصلح - يثبت	fixed	solve يحل	solved
move يتحرك - ينقل	moved	turn يدير - يلف	turned
save يوفر - ينقذ	saved	use يستخدم	used
talk يتكلم	talked	discuss يناقش	discussed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make يصنع	made	put يضع	put



Read and learn

What are some problems in our community?



Ali and Mona make a difference.

Ali : Our community has many **problems**, so let's talk about them.

Mona : OK! Let's also discuss **solutions** to **fix** them.

Ali : The first problem is **traffic**. Cars don't move quickly in the morning, especially near schools.

Mona : Do you know how to **solve** this problem?

Ali : Yes, I think so. We don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school bus **instead**. There will be **fewer** cars on the road.

Mona : That's right! The second problem is **trash**. Some people don't put trash in **bins**, so the streets look **dirty**. Does your street have this problem?

Ali : Yes, it does. But our neighbors don't **throw** trash on the **ground** anymore. We put new bins everywhere, and now everyone uses them!

Mona : That's great!

ما هي بعض المشكلات في مجتمعنا؟

علي ومنى يحدثان فارقاً.

علي : مجتمعنا لديه العديد من المشكلات، فلتحدث عنها.

منى : حسناً! دعنا نناقش أيضاً حلولاً لإصلاحها.

علي : المشكلة الأولى هي حركة المرور. السيارات لا تتحرك بسرعة في الصباح، خاصة بالقرب

من المدارس.

منى هل تعرف كيف تُحل هذه المشكلة؟

علي نعم، أعتقد ذلك. لا نحتاج لاستخدام السيارات كل يوم. يمكننا أن نأخذ حافلة المدرسة بدلاً من ذلك. سيكون هناك عدد أقل من السيارات على الطريق.

منى هذا صحيح! المشكلة الثانية هي القمامة. بعض الناس لا يضعون القمامة في الصناديق، لذا تبدو الشوارع متسخة. هل شارحك لديه هذه المشكلة؟

علي نعم، إنه كذلك. لكن جيراننا لم يعودوا يرمون القمامة على الأرض بعد الآن. لقد وضعنا صناديق جديدة في كل مكان، والآن يستخدمها الجميع!

منى هذا رائع!

GRAMMAR STUDY

Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Negative Sentences الجمل المنفية

(don't – doesn't) (لا)

● For negative, use "don't" or "doesn't" with the base verb.

● للنفي، استخدم "don't" أو "doesn't" متبوعة بالفعل في صورته الأساسية.

Subject	Auxiliary	Base Verb	Examples
I - We - They - You	don't	like	I don't like tea. أنا لا أحب الشاي.
He - She - It	doesn't		He doesn't like tea. هو لا يحب الشاي.

Notice:

don't = do not

doesn't = does not

Term 1

Questions

تكوين الأسئلة

(Do / Does) (هل)

● To form questions, use **Do** or **Does** + the subject + the base verb.

● لتكوين الأسئلة، استخدم "Do" أو "Does" متبوعة بالفاعل، ثم الفعل في صورته الأساسية.

Do-Does + subject + the base verb....?

Auxiliary	Subject	Base Verb	Examples
Do	I - you - we - they	like	Do you like tea? هل تحب الشاي؟
Does	he - she - it		Does he like tea? هل يحب الشاي؟

Examples:

▶ Do you like tea?

⇒ Yes, I do.

⇒ No, I don't.

▶ Does he like tea?

⇒ Yes, he does.

⇒ No, he doesn't.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My brother always to bed early.

a) going

b) goes

c) go

d) went

2. Birds in the morning.

a) sing

b) singing

c) sang

d) sings

3. She to read books.

a) to like

b) likes

c) liking

d) like

4. We football on Tuesdays.

a) aren't playing

b) doesn't play

c) not play

d) don't play

5. The cat vegetables.
a) don't eat b) not eat c) doesn't eat d) isn't eat
6. They their grandparents often.
a) aren't visiting b) doesn't visit c) not visit d) don't visit
7. your parents live in a big city?
a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Is
8. the sun rise in the east?
a) Is b) Does c) Are d) Do
9. you speak English?
a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Is
10. he work on weekends?
a) Is b) Are c) Do d) Does

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:



ground - bins - schools - traffic

1. The bus helps reduce
2. Our neighbors don't throw trash on the
3. Cars don't move quickly near
4. Everyone uses trash in my community.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our town has some problems. One problem is traffic near schools. Lots of cars make it **hard** to move quickly! We can help fix this. We can take the school bus every day instead of cars. This means fewer cars on the road. Another problem is trash. Sometimes, trash is on the streets because people don't use bins. But now, we put new bins everywhere! Everyone uses them, so our streets look clean and nice. When we all help, our town becomes great for everyone!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To solve the problem of traffic, we can take
a) Dad's car b) school bus c) a new car d) more cars

2. The word "**hard**" in the text means
 a) easy b) good c) difficult d) great

B Answer the following questions:

3. How can we solve the problem of trash?



4. Give a suitable title to the text.



4

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I (**not like**) listening to pop music.
2. My parents (**not live**) in a big city.
3. She (**not eat**) meat every day.
4. (**Does**) they speak Arabic at home?
5. Does he (**plays**) video games in the evening?
6. The train (**not leave**) at 9:00 AM.
7. I (**not understand**) you.
8. (**Do**) your sister watch horror movies?

5

Punctuate the following:

1. does your street have this problem
2. there will be fewer cars on the road
3. We don t need to use cars every day

6

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Community problems"



► **traffic - trash - solve**

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 3

Egypt
My Culture

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



The Delta
الدلتا



cotton

قطن



crafts

مصنوعات يدوية



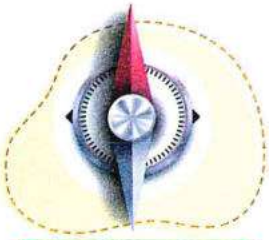
decorations

زينة - ديكورات



factories

مصانع



north

الشمال



outfits

أزياء / ملابس



pants

بنطلون - بناطيل



rice

أرز .



region

منطقة



Spring Festival

عيد الربيع



shirts

قمصان

Upper Egypt الصعيد



carpets

سجاد



galabeyas

جلايبات



harvest (n.)

حصاد



Nubia

النوبة



pottery

فخار



stories

قصص



south

الجنوب



sugar cane

قصب السكر



turbans

عمائم

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Egypt

مصر

culture

ثقافة

Egyptians

مصريون

designs

تصميمات

governorate

محافظة

differences

اختلافات

city

مدينة

together

معاً / سوياً

village

قرية

traditions

تقاليد

Adjectives

صفات

beautiful	جميل	old	قديم
bright	مشرق - ساطع	painted	مطلي
colorful	ملون	proud	فخور
different	مختلف	special	خاص - مميز
known	معروف - مشهور	stylish	أنيق
modern	حديث	traditional	تقليدي

Prepositions

حروف الجر

by hand	باليدي - يدويًا	proud of	فخور بـ
known for	يشتهر بـ	for special events	للمناسبات الخاصة
in bright colors	بألوان زاهية	with colorful decorations	مع زينة ملونة
like Nubia	مثل النوبة		

Important Sentences & Expressions

جمل وتعبيرات هامة

weave colorful carpets by hand	life is different.	الحياة مختلفة.
celebrate it together!	tell old stories	يروون (يحكون) قصصاً قديمة
Even though	traditional songs	أغاني تقليدية
على الرغم من أن / بالرغم من أن		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	love يحب	loved
paint يدهن / يرسم	painted	work يعمل	worked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
have	يملك / لديه	had		tell	يروي / يخبر	told	
know	يعرف	knew		weave	ينسج	wove	
sing	يغني	sang		wear	يرتدي / يلبس	wore	



Read and learn



Our Egyptian Culture

Egypt has two special regions: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its **traditions** and **culture**.

In the Delta, they **celebrate** the Spring **Festival** with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women are known for making clothes.

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane **harvest** with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful **carpets** by hand. Families sing traditional **songs** and tell old **stories**. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs.

In the Delta, men wear galabeyas or **modern clothes** like pants and shirts. Women wear stylish dresses or traditional **outfits** for special **events**.

In Upper Egypt, men also wear galabeyas and sometimes **turbans**. Women wear colorful dresses.

Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are **proud** of their culture and love to celebrate it together!



ثقافتنا المصرية

مصر لديها منطقتان مميزتان: الدلتا في الشمال والصعيد في الجنوب. لكل منطقة تقاليدها وثقافتها.

في الدلتا، يحتفلون بعيد الربيع بزينة ملونة وأطعمة خاصة. يزرع الفلاحون الأرز والقطن. يعمل الكثير من الناس في المصانع ويصنعون مصنوعات يدوية جميلة. وتشتهر النساء بصنع الملابس.

في الصعيد، الحياة مختلفة. يحتفل الناس بحصاد قصب السكر باحتفالات كبيرة. إنهم يصنعون الفخار وينسجون سجاداً ملوناً باليد. تغني العائلات الأغاني التقليدية وتروي قصصاً قديمة. وفي بعض الأماكن مثل النوبة، تُدهن المنازل بألوان زاهية ويكون لها تصميمات مميزة.

في الدلتا، يرتدي الرجال الجلابيات أو الملابس العصرية مثل البناتيل والقمصان. وترتدي النساء فساتين أنيقة أو أزياء تقليدية للمناسبات الخاصة. في الصعيد، يرتدي الرجال أيضاً الجلابيات وأحياناً العمام. وترتدي النساء فساتين ملونة.

على الرغم من أن المكانين بينهما بعض الاختلافات، إلا أنهما يتشاركان العديد من التقاليد المتشابهة. المصريون فخرون بثقافتهم ويحبون الاحتفال بها معاً!

Pronunciation



The /f/ and /v/ sounds

- The /f/ sound is voiceless — your throat doesn't vibrate, like in "fish".

الصوت /f/ هو صوت مهموس — لا يهتز فيه الحلق، كما في كلمة "fish".

- Put your hand on your vocal cords right now. ضع يدك على حلقك الآن.

For the /f/ sound (like in fish):

بالنسبة لصوت ال /f/

- ▶ Repeat the "f-f-f" sound.

كرر صوت ال /f/

- ▶ Do your vocal cords vibrate? No! It's a **voiceless** sound.

هل اهتز حلقك؟ لا! إنه صوت مهموس، لا يوجد اهتزاز.

For the /v/ sound (like in van):

بالنسبة لصوت ال /v/

- The /v/ sound is voiced — your throat vibrates, like in "van".

الصوت /v/ هو صوت مجهور — يهتز فيه الحلق، كما في كلمة "van".

- ▶ Repeat the "v-v-v" sound.

كرر صوت ال /v/ .

- ▶ Do your vocal cords vibrate? Yes! It's a **voiced** sound, feel the buzz!

هل تحرك حلقك؟ نعم! إنه صوت مجهور، اشعر بالاهتزاز.

Examples:



The /f/ sound:



factory
مصنع



forest
غابة



frog
ضفدع



flag
علم

The /v/ sound:



van
شاحنة



vest
سترة



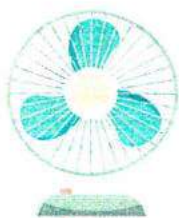
violin
كمان



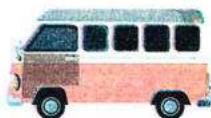
view
منظر

Read these pairs:

اقرأ هذه الأزواج:



fan



van



leaf



leave



fat



vat



foul



vowel



Prefixes "dis-" / "il-" / "ir-"

- A prefix is a small group of letters added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning.

البادئة هي مجموعة صغيرة من الحروف تُضاف إلى بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

- 1 "dis-" means "not". معناها "لا" أو "ليس" أو "غير".

Examples:

- ▶ agree (يوافق) → disagree (لا يوافق)
 ▶ appear (يظهر) → disappear (يختفي/لا يظهر)

- 2 "il-" means "not", but we use it when the word starts with an "L".

معناها "لا" أو "ليس" أو "غير" لكننا نستخدمها عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف 'L'.

Examples:

- ▶ legal (قانوني) → illegal (غير قانوني)
 ▶ logical (منطقي) → illogical (غير منطقي)

- 3 "ir-" means "not", but we use it when the word starts with an "R".

معناها "لا" أو "ليس" أو "غير" لكننا نستخدمها عندما تبدأ الكلمة بحرف 'R'.

Examples:

- ▶ regular (منتظم) → irregular (غير منتظم)
 ▶ responsible (مسؤول) → irresponsible (غير مسؤول)

Exercises on Lesson 3

- 1 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is divided into two special regions: the green Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each life is a bit different, with unique traditions. In the Delta, people make crafts and wear modern clothes. In Upper Egypt, they weave carpets, and men sometimes wear turbans. Even with differences, all Egyptians are proud of their shared culture and celebrate together!

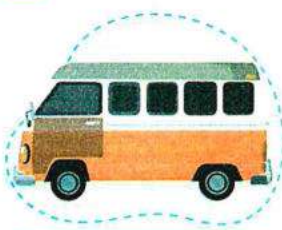
A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In the Delta, people make
 a) cars b) carpets c) crafts d) statues
- Egyptians are proud of their culture.
 a) foreign b) shared c) simple d) modern

B Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title to the text.
 ►
- Where are The Delta and Upper Egypt located within Egypt?
 ►

2 Complete with "f" or "v":



_an



_lag



_orest



_est

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What Omar says is It doesn't make sense. SB
 a) illogical b) irresponsible c) dishonest d) disable
- It's to drive without a license.
 a) irrelevant b) illegal c) illogical d) disable
- Please don't with me; I think we can agree on this.
 a) dislike b) disappear c) disagree d) dishonest
- He was very when he broke the vase and didn't tell anyone.
 a) illogical b) irrelevant c) irresponsible d) illegal

5. The teacher says my question is to the lesson.
 a) illegal b) irrelevant c) appear d) irresponsible

6. The cat after it ate all the food.
 a) irregular b) disappeared c) illegal d) dishonest



4 Punctuate the following:

1. in the delta, they celebrate the spring festival.

▶

2. houses are painted in bright colors in nubia.

▶

3. The egyptians are proud of their culture

▶

4. what festivals do you celebrate

▶

5 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Upper Egypt Traditions"

▶ celebrate - tell - wear

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

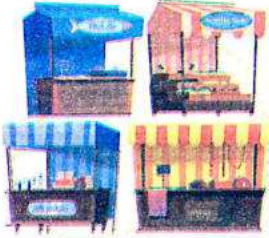
.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

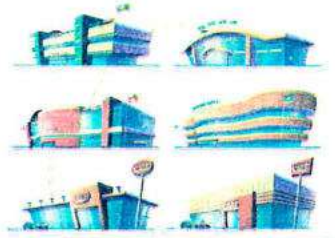
الكلمات الأساسية



wooden stalls
أكشاك خشبية



old market
سوق قديم



malls
مولات/أسواق تجارية



small houses
منازل صغيرة



tall buildings
مبانٍ طويلة



busy streets
شوارع مزدحمة



train station
محطة قطار



beautiful gardens
حدائق جميلة



diary
مفكرة - يوميات



history
تاريخ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

ago	منذ	safely	بأمان
even	حتى	such	مثل هذا / هكذا
grandpa	جد	then	حينذاك
grandma	جدة	today	اليوم

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

Dear grandpa,	It makes me proud.	هذا يجعلني
جدي العزيز / جدي الغالي		
Many years ago,	Such a rich history	مثل هذا التاريخ الغني
منذ سنوات عديدة		
Tell stories.	Yours truly,	المخلص لك / مع خالص تحياتي
أحكى قصصاً.		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
play	يلعب	played	show
		يعرض	showed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stand	يقف	stood	sell
		بيع	sold



Read and Learn



March 15, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's **history**. Fifty years **ago**, our **neighborhood** was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful **old** market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning.

The tall buildings weren't here **then**. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets. There was even a small **train station** where our park is now!

Grandpa showed me **old photos**. I saw the **old school** that still stands today. He said people helped to build it together many years ago. It makes me proud to know our community has such a **rich history**.

Yours truly,

Hana

15 مارس 2025

عزيتي مفكرتي،

حكى لي جدي اليوم قصصاً رائعة عن تاريخ مجتمعنا. قبل خمسين عاماً، كان حيّنا مختلفاً جداً! في مكان السوبر ماركت الكبير الموجود الآن، كان هناك سوق قديم جميل بأكشاك خشبية. كان الناس يبيعون الفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة كل صباح.

المباني الطويلة لم تكن موجودة حينذاك. بدلاً من ذلك، كانت هناك منازل صغيرة بدائق جميلة. كان الجميع يعرفون جيرانهم، وكان الأطفال يلعبون بأمان في الشوارع. وكانت هناك محطة قطار صغيرة في المكان الذي توجد فيه حديقتنا الآن!

أراني جدي صوراً قديمة. رأيت المدرسة القديمة التي لا تزال موجودة حتى اليوم. قال إن الناس ساعدوا في بنائها معاً منذ سنوات عديدة. هذا يجعلني فخورة بمعرفة أن مجتمعنا يمتلك تاريخاً غنياً كهذا.
المخلصة لك،
هنا



Language Notes:

How to Write a Diary Entry كيف تكتب صفحة في مذكراتك

Here's how you do it: إليك الطريقة

1 Start with the date التاريخ

Write today's date at the top of your page.

ضع تاريخ اليوم في أعلى الصفحة.

Example: July 16, 2025

2 Write a greeting التحية

Example: "Dear diary," or "Hello diary,"

عزيرتي مفكرتي،

3 Add details التفاصيل

Write about your day, what you did or saw.

اكتب عن يومك عما فعلته أو رأيته.

4 End with a closing الختام

End with "Yours truly," and your name.

اختتم بعبارة "المخلص لك" واسمك.

Example: Yours truly,
Alex

Write a diary entry about your day

اكتب تدوينة في مفكرتك عن يومك

Write the date at the top of your page.

اكتب التاريخ في أعلى الصفحة.

July 16, 2025

Write a greeting:

اكتب التحية

Dear diary,

Add details:
أضف التفاصيل.
صف ماذا فعلت.

Today was so much fun! I went to the zoo with my family. We saw the big lions and the silly monkeys. My favorite was the giraffe because it was so tall! I also ate a yummy hot dog. I can't wait to go again!

Yours truly,

Alex

End with "Yours truly," and your name.

أنهِ مذكراتك بـ "الملخص لك، واسمك."



Project

- Make a poster about ways to solve a community problem.

صمم ملصقًا حول طرق حل مشكلة مجتمعية.

Let's Tackle Litter Together! لنواجه مشكلة القمامة معًا!



Let's clean the street.

هيا ننظف الشارع.



Don't litter.

لا ترمي القمامة على الأرض.



Let's put bins everywhere.

هيا نضع سلات المهملات في كل مكان.

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5
1 Read the text and answer the questions:

July 16, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, I walked around our neighborhood. I saw pretty flowers in Mrs. Kim's garden. They are starting to open. The new coffee shop was busy. People were talking and laughing there. I saw my friend Sam. He was riding his scooter. It's fun to see things in our neighborhood. It feels like a big family here!

Yours truly,

Dodo

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The new coffee shop was
a) closed **b)** empty **c)** busy **d)** hot
2. The underlined word "They" refers to
a) Ms. Kim **b)** the garden **c)** neighborhood **d)** flowers

B Answer the following questions:

3. What was Sam doing when Dodo saw him?
 ►
4. How does Dodo describe the feeling in the neighborhood?
 ►

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Our community (**have**) a rich history.
2. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood (**is**) very different.

3. Where our big supermarket (stand) now, there was an old market.
4. The old market had wooden (stall).
5. The tall buildings (was) not here then.
6. There were small houses with beautiful (garden).

3 Punctuate the following:

1. there was a beautiful old market

▶

2. my friend ali showed me old photos.

▶

3. what did the community do together

▶

- 4 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your Neighborhood"



▶ houses - shops - parks

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 2

Main Vocabulary

bins	صناديق القمامة	carpets	سجاد
clean (v.)	ينظف	crafts	مصنوعات (مشغولات) يدوية
collect	يجمع	decorations	زينة - ديكورات
dirty	متسخ - قذر	diary	مفكرة - يوميات
feed	يطعم	festivals	احتفالات - مهرجانات
help (v.)	يساعد	harvest (n.)	حصاد
plant (v.)	يزرع	outfits	أزياء - ملابس
road	طريق	stalls	أكشاك
traffic	ازدحام مروري	sugar cane	قصب السكر
volunteer (v.)	يتطوع	turbans	عمائم

Pronunciation



The /f/ and /v/ sounds



fan



van

- /f/ صوت هادئ لا يحدث إهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية (همسي).
- /v/ صوت صاخب/قوي يحدث إهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية (جهري).

Grammar Study



Present Simple (Negative & interrogative)

Subject	Auxiliary	Base Verb	Examples
I - We - They - You	don't	like	I don't like tea. أنا لا أحب الشاي.
He - She - It	doesn't		He doesn't like tea. هو لا يحب الشاي.

don't = do not

doesn't = does not

Auxiliary	Subject	Base Verb	Examples
Do	I - you - we - they	like	Do you like tea? هل تحب الشاي؟
Does	he - she - it		Does he like tea? هل يحب الشاي؟

Dictation:

clothes	طريق
cool	حافلة المدرسة
ducks	مرور / زحام مروري
great	صناديق القمامة / حاويات
happy	قذر / متسخ
neighbors	أرض
nice	يرمي
old clothes	قمامة
streets	ينظف
everywhere	يجمع
especially	يساعد
fewer	يحتاج
great	يزرع
instead	يتطوع
solutions	يحتفل
culture	يحب
designs	يدهن / يرسم
differences	يعمل
together	تاريخ
traditions	مفكرة - يوميات

Practice 3 on Unit 2

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Adam helps his community by cleaning (streets - parks - houses).
2. Amira collects (food - old clothes - toys).
3. Adam sometimes (walks - feeds - washes) the dogs and cats.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

feed - community - plant - collect

Amira : Hi, Adam! How do you help our ①

Adam : Hi, Amira! I help clean the streets, and I ② trees in the park.

Amira : That's great! Do you do other things?

Adam : Yes! I ③ the dogs and cats sometimes.

Amira : Wow! I ④ old clothes for people.

Adam : That's wonderful!

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dear diary,

Grandpa told me stories today. Our home area was very different before. Long ago, a market was here, not a big shop. People sold fresh food there. Big buildings were not here. Small houses with gardens were here. Kids played safely on the roads. A small train place was here, not a park. Grandpa showed me old pictures. The old school is still here. People built it long ago. I am happy our home area has old stories.

Yours truly,

Hana

Term 1

A Answer the following questions:

1. What was in their home area a long time ago instead of a big shop?



2. Where did kids play in the past?



B Choose the correct answer:

3. The home area was very (same - different - new) before.

4. Small houses had pretty (trees - gardens - walls).

5. Grandpa showed Hana old (toys - pictures - clothes).

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. We (collect - volunteer - play) to help in the park.

2. The bus helps reduce (bins - trash - traffic).

3. The two regions of Egypt are (Cairo and Aswan - the Delta and the Upper Egypt - Tanta and Cairo).

4. My sister (isn't - don't - doesn't) help our community.

5. How (are - does - do) they go to school?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. Nubia - The - houses - have - special - designs - in.



2. the - built - supermarket - They - near - here.



3. amazing - told - some - Grandpa - me - stories.



4. he - take - Does - the - bus - school?



5. up - do - get - time - you - What?



Practice 4 on Unit 2

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. The first problem in the community is (noise - traffic - pollution - buildings).
2. The traffic problem is bad near (parks - shops - schools - homes).
3. The second problem is (water - trash - lights - noise).
4. New (trees - bins - cars - friends) helped make Mona's street clean.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. People in Upper Egypt celebrate the (Spring - cotton - sugar cane - rice) harvest.
2. The Delta is in the (east - north - south - west).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

great - community - volunteers - people

Linda's family bakes cookies monthly for firefighters and police. She
① at the library, organizing books and helping kids. Her
brother helps the old ② Omar teaches free art classes at the
③ center. They agree that everyone should help to make a
④ difference in their town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is very famous for its cotton. It is probably the best cotton in the world. This is because the Egyptians grow it along the Nile, and the Nile soil is very rich in nutrients. The Egyptian climate is humid; that is, wet. The sun shines almost every day. All these conditions are excellent for very good cotton. Egyptian cotton is special because its fibers are **longer** than other cottons.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Egypt is very famous for its (tomatoes - soil - sunflower - cotton).

2. The opposite of the underlined word "longer" is (taller - shorter - bigger - stronger) .

B Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ►
4. Why is the Egyptian cotton special? ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Salma doesn't (washes) her clothes.
2. Does Ibrahim (watched) TV at night?
3. Salem (is writing) his homework every day.
4. The cat always (appears) after eating all the foo food. I can't find it.

6. The Story

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Wanda sat in the (front - middle - back - corner) of the classroom.
2. Wanda's dress was (green - red - blue - yellow).

B Answer the following questions:

1. Who annoyed Wanda every morning? ►
2. Why didn't Maddie stop Peggy? ►

7 Punctuate the following:

1. does Talia come from the delta? ►

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"The Delta Traditions"



celebrate - rice and cotton - clothes

.....
.....
.....
.....



Unit 3 Animals in Our World

الحيوانات في عالمنا

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Describe animals and their daily habits.
- Use comparative adjectives to compare different animals.

Listening

- Understand basic conversations about animals.
- Recognize consonant blends **fr**, **dr**, and **pl**.

Reading

- Understand simple texts about animals and their habits.
- Read a short story with a moral lesson to get the main idea.

Writing

- Create a basic report about endangered animals.
- Complete a research project about a forest animal.

Lesson 1

Let's Meet the Animals!

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

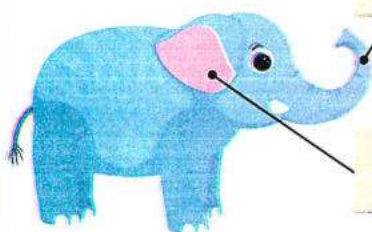
Animals & Their Descriptions

الحيوانات وأوصافها



elephant

فيل



trunk

خرطوم

big ears

آذان كبيرة

bear

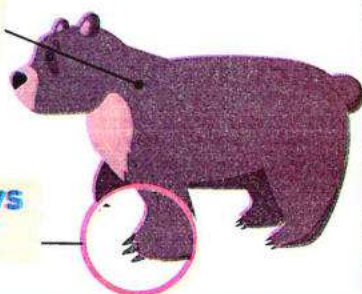
دب

thick fur

فرو كثيف

sharp claws

مخالب حادة



monkey

قرد



long tail

ذيل طويل

zebra

حمار وحشي

striped coat

فرو مخطط



lion

أسد



yellow fur

فرو أصفر

giraffe

زرافة



spotted coat

فرو منقط

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

jungle	غابة كثيفة	forest guide	مرشد للغابة
forest park	حديقة الغابة	visitors	زوار

Prepositions حروف الجر

at the forest	في الغابة	lots of water	الكثير من الماء
during the day	أثناء النهار	talk about	يتحدث عن
go with	يذهب مع	in groups	في مجموعات

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

up close	عن قرب	Lots of	الكثير من
as well	أيضًا - كذلك	make a difference	يصنع فرقًا
how to solve	كيف تحل	Sure!	بالتأكيد!
I think so.	أعتقد ذلك.	That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!
It must be amazing	لابد أنه أمر رائع	works as	يعمل كـ
look dirty	يبدو قذرًا - يبدو متسخًا	Would you like to visit ...?	هل تود أن تزور ...؟

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

climb	يتسلق	climbed	watch	يشاهد	watched
run	يصطاد	hunted	work	يعمل	worked
show	يعرض - يُظهر	showed	like	يحب	liked
spray	يرش - ينثر	sprayed	visit	يزور	visited

Present	Past	Present	Past
catch يصطاد - يمسك	caught	run يجري	ran
come يأتي	came	see يرى	saw
eat يأكل	ate	sleep ينام	slept

 Listen and read

A Day at the Forest Park

يوم في حديقة الغابة

Omar and Nadia are talking about animals at the forest park.



Omar : Hi, Nadia! What does your dad do at the **forest park**?

Nadia : He works as a **forest guide**. He shows visitors the animals.

Omar : Do you usually go with him?

Nadia : Sometimes.

Omar : What animals do visitors see?

Nadia : Lots of them! They see **elephants** drinking water and **monkeys** climbing trees.

Omar : That's interesting! Do they see **lions**, too?

Nadia : Yes, and **giraffes** as well.

Omar : Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

Nadia : That's right! How do you know all of this?

Omar : I watch a TV program about **animals**.

Nadia : Would you like to visit the forest park?

Omar : Sure! It must be amazing to see all those animals up close.

عمر ونادية يتحدثان عن الحيوانات في حديقة الغابة.

عمر : أهلاً يا نادية! ماذا يفعل والدك في حديقة الغابة؟

نادية : إنه يعمل كمرشد للغابة. إنه يُري الحيوانات للزوار.

عمر : هل تذهبين معه عادةً؟

نادية : أحياناً.

عمر : ما الحيوانات التي يراها الزوّار؟

نادية : الكثير منها! يرون الغيلة تشرب الماء والقرود تتسلق الأشجار.

عمر : هذا مثير للاهتمام! هل يرون الأسود أيضاً؟

نادية : نعم، والزرافات كذلك.

عمر : غالباً ما تصطاد الأسود في الليل وتنام أثناء النهار. الزرافات تأكل أوراق الأشجار الطويلة.

نادية : هذا صحيح! كيف تعرف كل هذا؟

عمر : أشاهد برنامجاً تلفزيونياً عن الحيوانات.

نادية : هل تود زيارة حديقة الغابة؟

عمر : بالتأكيد! لا بد أن رؤية كل تلك الحيوانات عن قرب أمر رائع.

The Lesson Notes

● Describing Animals with "It has ..."

We use "It has ..." to describe the animal's features or appearance.

نستخدم عبارة "It has .." لوصف ميزات الحيوان أو شكله.

Examples:

▶ The giraffe **has a long neck.**

تمتلك الزرافة رقبة طويلة.

▶ The elephant **has big ears.**

يمتلك الفيل آذاناً كبيرة.

▶ The bear **has thick fur.**

يمتلك الدب فرواً كثيفاً.

● Animal Actions with "Simple Present Tense"

We use the Present Simple tense to talk about animals' habits or facts.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات أو الحقائق المتعلقة بالحيوانات.

Examples:

▶ Monkeys **climb trees.**

تتسلق القرود الأشجار.

▶ Lions often **hunt at night.**

غالباً ما تصطاد الأسود ليلاً.

▶ Giraffes **eat leaves.**

تأكل الزرافات أوراق الأشجار.

1 Read and complete the text using the words in the box:

trunk - climb - hunt - striped

Nadia's dad is a forest guide at the forest park. He shows visitors many animals. They see monkeys ① trees. The elephant is big and gray, and it uses its ② to spray water. The zebra has a ③ coat. Lions often ④ at night.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hi! I'm Leo. I love animals, especially my pet cat, Whiskers. She has soft, white fur and big green eyes. Every evening, Whiskers loves to play with a feather toy. She can jump very high! For food, Whiskers eats special cat food, but sometimes I give her a small piece of cooked fish. Taking care of Whiskers is fun, and she always makes me smile.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Leo has a pet
 a) cat b) dog c) bird d) fish
- The underlined word "soft" means
 a) hard b) rough c) smooth d) sharp

B Answer the following questions:

- What does Whiskers love to do every evening?



- What does Leo sometimes give Whiskers as a treat?



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The has a very long neck.
 a) lion b) giraffe c) elephant d) bear
2. Monkeys usually trees.
 a) hunt b) swim c) climb d) run
3. The is big and gray and uses its trunk.
 a) zebra b) elephant c) monkey d) lion
4. Lions often at night.
 a) sleep b) eat c) play d) hunt
5. A has thick fur and sharp claws.
 a) giraffe b) zebra c) bear d) elephant
6. The has a striped coat.
 a) monkey b) zebra c) elephant d) lion

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The elephant (use) its trunk to spray water.
2. Lions often (hunts) at night.
3. Nadia's dad (work) as a forest guide.
4. Giraffes (eat) leaves from tall trees.
5. What (do) the monkey do?
6. Omar and Nadia (is) talking about animals.
7. The bear (catch) fish.
8. Let's (seeing) the animals up close.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. what does nadia's dad do?

▶

Unit 3

2. lions hunt at night



3. the elephant has big ears



4. do they see lions too



5. it must be amazing to see those animals



6 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your favorite animal"



► name - where it lives - its description - what it does

Handwriting practice area with 10 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Lesson 2 Taking Care of Animals

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



bird

طائر



cage

قفص



challenges

تحديات



forest officer

ضابط الغابة



pet

حيوان أليف



rabbit

أرنب



spaces

مساحات



vet

طبيب بيطري



the wild

البرية



zoo

حديقة حيوان

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

acts (n.)	أفعال - تصرفات	help (n.)	مساعدة
attention	اهتمام	homes	منازل
care (n.)	رعاية	kindness	لطف - طيبة
exercise (n.)	تمرين	owners	ملاك
health	صحة	ways	طرق
vegetables	خضراوات	tanks	أحواض

Unit 3

Adjectives

صفات

better	أفضل	kind	لطيف
big	كبير	safe	آمن
clean	نظيف	simple	بسيط
daily	يومي	small	صغير
fresh	طازج	special	خاص
happy	سعيد	tall	طويل
healthy	صحي	wild	برّي

Important Sentences & Expressions

جمل وتمبيرات هامة

acts of kindness	التصرفات اللطيفة	makes our world better	يجعل عالمنا أفضل
being kind to animals	أن تكون لطيفًا مع الحيوانات	move around	يتحرك بحرية - يتجول
face different challenges	يواجه تحديات مختلفة	need bigger spaces	يحتاج إلى مساحات أكبر
create a safer place	يخلق مكانًا أكثر أمانًا	need special attention	يحتاج إلى اهتمام خاص
homes are getting smaller	تصبح منازلهم أصغر	needs special care	يحتاج إلى رعاية خاصة
Everyone can help.	يمكن للجميع المساعدة.	stay healthy and safe	يبقى بصحة جيدة وآمنًا
live well	يعيش بشكل جيد	work harder	يعمل بجهد أكبر
check their health	يفحص صحتهم	daily care	رعاية يومية
safe places to live	أماكن آمنة للعيش	in simple ways	بطرق بسيطة

Prepositions حروف الجر

care for animals	يعتني بالحيوانات	important to	مهم لـ
need care from	يحتاج إلى رعاية من	in the wild	في البرية
at night	في الليل	in zoos	في حدائق الحيوان

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
add	يضيف	added		double	يضاعف	doubled	
change	يُغَيِّر	changed		face	يواجه	faced	
check	يفحص	checked		move	يتحرك	moved	
create	يخلق - ينشئ	created		protect	يحمي	protected	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
be (am - is - are)	يكون	was - were		give	يعطي	gave	
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught		make	يصنع	made	

Read and learn



Helping Animals

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal **needs special care** to live well.



Zoo animals need special attention. **Elephants need** bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. **Lions eat a lot of food** to stay stronger than other animals. **Giraffes need** taller trees to reach their food. **Vets** often check their health.

Wild animals face different **challenges**. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They **need clean** water and **safe places** to live. **Forest officers** now work harder than before to protect these animals and their homes.

Pets need daily care from their **owners**. **Dogs** need some exercise. **Rabbits** eat fresh vegetables. They are healthier than other animals. **Birds** need cleaner cages than **fish** need tanks.

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of kindness make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and healthier.

مساعدة الحيوانات

تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا لتبقى بصحة جيدة وآمنة. بعض الحيوانات تعيش في البرية، بينما يعيش البعض الآخر في حدائق الحيوان أو المنازل. كل حيوان يحتاج إلى رعاية خاصة ليعيش بشكل جيد.

حيوانات حديقة الحيوان تحتاج إلى اهتمام خاص. تحتاج الفيلة إلى مساحات أكبر من القروء للتحرك. تأكل الأسود الكثير من الطعام لتبقى أقوى من الحيوانات الأخرى. تحتاج الزرافات إلى أشجار أطول للوصول إلى طعامها. يقوم الأطباء البيطريون غالبًا بفحص صحة الحيوانات. تواجه الحيوانات البرية تحديات مختلفة. إن أماكن عيشها تنقل بسبب المدن الجديدة. إنها تحتاج إلى مياه نظيفة وأماكن آمنة للعيش. يعمل ضباط الغابة الآن بجهد أكبر من ذي قبل لحماية هذه الحيوانات وأماكن عيشها.

تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها. تحتاج الكلاب إلى بعض التمرين. تأكل الأرانب الخضروات الطازجة. إنها أكثر صحة من الحيوانات الأخرى. تحتاج الطيور إلى أقفاص أنظف أكثر من احتياج الأسماك من لأحواض.

يمكن للجميع المساعدة في حماية الحيوانات بطرق بسيطة. التصرفات اللطيفة الصغيرة تجعل عالمنا أفضل. عندما نعتني بالحيوانات، فنحن نوفر لها مكانًا أكثر أمانًا. إن اللطف مع الحيوانات يُعلّمنا أن نكون أشخاصًا أفضل. معًا يمكننا أن نجعل حياة الحيوانات أكثر سعادة وصحة.

GRAMMAR STUDY

(Adjectives) Comparison المقارنة

Comparative degree:

- We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals, or two things.

نُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء وهكذا.

Examples:

- Horses are faster **than** camels.
- The lion is stronger **than** the fox.

- We add (**er**) to the **short adjective** and use the word (**than**) after it. نضيف للصفة القصيرة (**er**) ونضع بعدها كلمة (**than** من).

- When the adjective ends in (**e**), we add (**r**).

إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بـ (**e**) نضيف لها (**r**) فقط.

large ►►► larger nice ►►► nicer fine ►►► finer

Example:

- Is the new hotel nicer **than** the old hotel?

- When the adjective ends in a consonant after one vowel, we double the final consonant before adding (**er**).

إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك ناطق، نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة (**er**).

big ►►► bigger thin ►►► thinner
fat ►►► fatter hot ►►► hotter

Example:

- My bag is bigger **than** your bag.

Unit 3

When the adjective ends in a consonant and (y), we change the (y) into (i) before adding (er).

إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف ساكن و(y)، تُحوَّل الـ (y) إلى (i) قبل إضافة (er).

heavy ►►► heavier easy ►►► easier happy ►►► happier
noisy ►►► noisier scary ►►► scarier healthy ►►► healthier

Example:

► Parrots are noisier than spiders.

Adjective		Adjective + er	
tall	طويل	taller	أطول
long	طويل	longer	أطول
short	قصير	shorter	أقصر
fast	سريع	faster	أسرع
slow	بطيء	slower	أبطأ
small	صغير	smaller	أصغر
big	كبير	bigger	أكبر
cold	بارد	colder	أبرد
hot	حار	hotter	أكثر حرارة
strong	قوي	stronger	أقوى
few	قليل	fewer	أقل
nice	لطيف	nicer	ألطف
thin	رفيع	thinner	أرفع
warm	دافئ	warmer	أكثر دفئاً
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	أثقل
noisy	مزعج	noisier	أكثر إزعاجاً
easy	سهل	easier	أسهل
scary	مخيف	scarier	أكثر إخافة

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

protect - important - pets - wild

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the ①, needing clean water to drink and safe places to live. Others are ②, requiring care from owners. Forest officers work to ③ wild animals and their homes. It's ④ for us to be kind to all animals.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Horses are my favorite animals. They have large, beautiful eyes. Horses have strong teeth. They like to eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses are very fast animals. They can run at around 88 kph. They can live more than 25 years. They are very helpful and useful.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The underlined word "large" means
 a) small b) short c) tall d) big
2. Horses can live than 25 years.
 a) less b) more c) smaller d) fewer

B Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

4. How fast can horses run?

▶

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Elephants need than monkeys.
 a) smaller spaces b) bigger spaces
 c) cleaner water d) taller trees

Unit 3

2. Pets need care from their owners.
 a) weekly b) daily c) monthly d) yearly
3. Everyone can help protect animals by
 a) hitting them b) caring for them
 c) avoiding them d) beating them
4. Lions eat a lot of food to stay
 a) weaker b) shorter c) stronger d) smaller
5. Giraffes need trees to reach their food.
 a) shorter b) taller c) smaller d) bigger

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Elephants are (big) than monkeys. 
2. The weather today is (cold) than yesterday. 
3. He is (tall) than his brother. 
4. Marwa is (lazy) than her sister. 
5. Rabbits are (healthy) than some other animals.
6. Cats are (safe) than lions in homes.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. animals need our help to stay healthy



2. do dogs need some exercise



3. vets check animals' health



6 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"How to take care of your pet"



▶ healthy - exercise - clean

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 3

Story Time: The Old Lion and the Fox

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



cave

كهف



clever

ذكى



danger

خطر



entrance

مدخل



footprints

آثار أقدام



fox

ثعلب



hunt (v.)

يصاد



mistakes

أخطاء



sick

مريض



trick

خدعة



weak

ضعيف



wise

حكيم

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

bed

سرير

meanings

معاني

feet

أقدام

mistake

خطأ

ground

أرض

moral

عبرة - درس أخلاقي

Unit 3

hole	حفرة - ثقب	mountain	جبل
lesson	درس	story	قصة
marks	علامات	surface	سطح

Adjectives

صفات

fluffy	منفوش وناعم	right	صحيح
friendly	ودود	wrong	خطأ - خاطئ
large	كبير	weak	ضعيف
quick	سريع	strong	قوي
red-brown	بنّي محمر	young	صغير - شاب

Prepositions

حروف الجر

for food	من أجل الطعام	stood at	وقف عند
looked at	نظر إلى	went into	دخل إلى

Important Sentences & Expressions

جمل وتمبيرات هامة

called out	نادى بصوت عالٍ	none of them	لا أحد منهم
came out	خرج	Oh, dear!	أوه، عزيزي!
heard about	سمع عن	Oh! I am so sick!	أوه! أنا مريض جدًا!
How are you feeling?	كيف تشعر؟ / كيف حالك؟	I learn from the mistakes of others!	أنا أتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين!
one by one	واحدًا تلو الآخر	ran away	هرب / فرّ
lay down	استلقى	too weak	ضعيف جدًا

Definitions تعريفات

A cave

كهف

: is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live.

هو تجويف كبير في جبل حيث يمكن للحيوانات أن تعيش.

A fox

ثعلب

: is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur.

هو حيوان صغير وسريع وذو ذيل كثيف وفرو بني محمر.

Footprints

آثار أقدام

: are marks left by feet.

هي علامات تتركها الأقدام.

Hunt (v.)

يصطاد

: to look for and catch animals for food.

البحث عن الحيوانات والإمساك بها من أجل الطعام.

Pretended

تظاهر

: acted like something is true when it isn't.

تظاهر بأن شيئاً ما حقيقي بينما هو ليس كذلك.

Lay down

يستلقي

: put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed.

وَضَعَ نفسك على سطح، مثل الأرض أو السرير.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

hunt	يصطاد
laugh	يفضح
learn	يتعلم
pretend	يتظاهر
visit	يزور

Past

hunted
laughed
learned
pretended
visited

Present

act	يتصرف - يمثل
enter	يدخل
match	يوصل - يطابق
notice	يلاحظ
remember	يتذكر

Past

acted
entered
matched
noticed
remembered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

catch	يمسك - يصطاد
come out	يخرج
stand	يقف

Past

caught
came out
stood

Present

lay down	يستلقي
leave	يغادر
think	يفكر

Past

laid down
left
thought

Listen and read



The Old Lion and the Fox



Once there was an old **lion** who couldn't **hunt** anymore. He was too **weak** to **catch** animals for food.

So, he thought of a clever **trick**. The lion went into his cave and **pretended** to be very sick. He lay down and called out, "Oh! I am so sick! Please, come visit me before I die!"

Many **animals** heard about the sick lion. One by one, they went into his **cave** to visit him. But none of them came out! The lion was **catching** and eating each visitor.

A wise **fox** came near the cave. He saw many **footprints** going in, but none coming out.

The fox stood at the cave entrance and said, "Hello, dear lion! How are you feeling?"

"Oh, dear fox!" said the lion. "I am very sick. Please come in and visit me!"

The fox looked at the footprints again and replied, "Thank you, but I can see that many animals went into your cave, but none came out. I learn from the mistakes of others!"

And with that, the wise fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.

الأسد العجوز والثعلب

كان هناك أسد عجوز لم يعد قادرًا على الصيد. لقد أصبح ضعيفًا جدًا لدرجة أنه لم يعد يستطيع الإمساك بالحيوانات من أجل الطعام. ففكر الأسد في خدعة ذكية. دخل إلى كهفه وتظاهر بأنه مريض جدًا. استلقى على الأرض وبدأ ينادي:

"أه! أنا مريض جدًا! أرجوكم، تعالوا لزيارتي قبل أن أموت!"

سمعت الحيوانات عن الأسد المريض، وبدأت تذهب إلى الكهف واحدًا تلو الآخر لزيارته، ولكن لم يخرج أي منها! كان الأسد يمسك بكل زائر ويأكله!

جاء ثعلب حكيم بالقرب من الكهف. فرأى آثار أقدام كثيرة تدخل الكهف، لكن لا توجد آثار خارجة منه!

وقف الثعلب عند مدخل الكهف وقال: "مرحبًا عزيزي الأسد! كيف حالك؟"

قال الأسد: "أوه، عزيزي الثعلب! أنا مريض جدًا. أرجوك ادخل لزيارتي!"

نظر الثعلب إلى آثار الأقدام مرة أخرى، ثم رد قائلاً: "شكرًا لك، لكنني أستطيع أن أرى أن حيوانات كثيرة دخلت كهفك، ولم يخرج أي منها. أنا أعلم من أخطاء الآخرين!" وبذلك هرب الثعلب الحكيم بأمان وهو يضحك على خدعة الأسد.

Pronunciation



دمج الأصوات Blending Sounds

● ما معنى "دمج الأصوات"؟

- حرفين ساكنين أو أكثر يمتزجان معًا بسلاسة عند النطق.
- يمكنك سماع صوت كل حرف ساكن بوضوح ضمن المجموعة المدمجة.

Examples:

The /fr/ sound:



frown

عبوس - مكشر



frog

ضفدع



friend

صديق



fruit

فاكهة

The /pl/ sound:



plane

طائرة



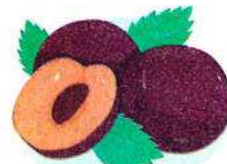
play

يلعب



plant

نبات



plum

برقوق

The /dr/ sound:



dress
فستان



drink
يشرب



draw
يرسم



drum
طبله

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My brother is very He can solve difficult puzzles.
a) sick b) dear c) clever d) weak
- A is a home for lions and other wild animals.
a) food b) trick c) cave d) visitor
- The lion used clever to catch animals.
a) caves b) animals c) footprints d) tricks
- The bear is fish in the river to eat.
a) playing b) pretending c) catching d) laughing
- A person learns from the mistakes of others..
a) old b) weak c) sick d) wise
- The police officer followed the thief's and caught him.
a) visitors b) shops c) footprints d) caves

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Once, an old lion was too **weak** to hunt for food. So, he pretended to be very sick inside his cave. He called to other animals to visit him before he died. Many went in, but none came out; the lion ate each visitor! A wise fox saw many footprints going into the cave, but none came out. The fox learned from the others' mistakes and ran away safely.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "weak" is
 a) strong b) small c) ill d) wise
2. The lion pretended to be
 a) hungry b) happy c) sick d) cleve

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the fox notice near the cave?
4. What is the moral of this story?

3 Write 4 words that start with each blend:

1. fr-
2. pl-
3. dr-

4 Match the words in (A) to their meanings in (B):

A	B
1. A cave	a. are marks left by feet
2. A fox	b. to look for and catch animals for food
3. Footprints	c. is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live
4. Hunt	d. is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur

5 Punctuate the following:

1. Please come visit me before i die.

2. do you think all animals are friendly

3. did ahmed like the story?

Lessons 4-5 Writing: Research Report & Project: Collage



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



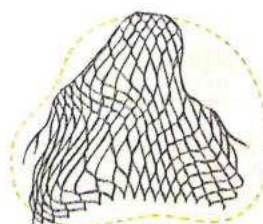
sea animals

حيوانات بحرية



sea grass

عشب بحري



fishing nets

شباك الصيد



pollution

التلوث

Endangered Species

الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض



Arabian Leopard

النمر العربي



The Red Sea Dugong

أطوم البحر الأحمر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

animals	حيوانات	Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
areas	مناطق	protect	يحمي
because	بسبب	reason	سبب
facts	حقائق	remain	يبقى
gentle	لطيف - وديع	safe	آمن
habitats	موائل - بيئات طبيعية	sea	بحر
important	هام - مهم	stop (v.)	يوقف

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

around the world	حول العالم	disappearing forever	الاختفاء للأبد
in danger	في خطر	Less than	أقل من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
act يتصرف	acted	disappear يختفي	disappeared
call ينادي	called	remain يبقى	remained
create يخلق / ينشئ	created	research يبحث	researched

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
build يبني	built	teach يُعَلِّم	taught

Read and learn



Endangered Animals

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered species. Here are some important facts about endangered animals.

The **Arabian Leopard** is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.



The **Red Sea Dugong** is another endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

To help these animals, we need to:

- protect their homes
- stop pollution
- create safe areas
- teach people about them

If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever.



الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض

العديد من الحيوانات حول العالم معرضة لخطر الاختفاء إلى الأبد. تسمى هذه الحيوانات بالأنواع المهددة بالانقراض. إليك بعض الحقائق الهامة حول الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.

النمر العربي هو أحد أكثر الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض في مصر والشرق الأوسط. لقد تبقى أقل من 200 من هذه القطط الجميلة في البرية. إن أحد أسباب كَوْن هذه الحيوانات معرضة للخطر هو أن الناس يبنون المنازل في بيئاتها الطبيعية.

أطوم البحر الأحمر هو حيوان آخر مهدد بالانقراض في مصر. تتغذى هذه الحيوانات البحرية اللطيفة على العُشب البحري. إنها معرضة للخطر بسبب التلوث وشباك الصيد.

لمساعدة هذه الحيوانات، يجب علينا أن:

- نحمي منازلها
- نوقف التلوث
- نُنشئ مناطق آمنة
- نُثَقِّف الناس عنها

إذا لم نتصرف الآن، فقد تختفي هذه الحيوانات المدهشة إلى الأبد.



Language Notes:

How to Write a Good Report كيف تكتب تقريرًا جيدًا

Here's how you do it: إليك الطريقة

① A Clear Title: The name of your report!

▶ Ex: "Endangered Animals"

عنوان واضح: اسم تقريرك!

الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض

② **An Introduction: This is the beginning of your report.**

مقدمة: هذه هي بداية تقريرك.

▶ Ex: Many animals are in danger of disappearing.

العديد من الحيوانات معرضة لخطر الاختفاء.

③ **Facts and Information: You share true and interesting things.**

حقائق ومعلومات: شارك أشياء حقيقية ومثيرة للاهتمام.

▶ Ex: Dolphins are smart animals.

الدلافين حيوانات ذكية.

④ **Examples: It helps to show people what you mean.**

أمثلة: تساعد في إظهار ما تعنيه للناس.

▶ Ex: For example, dolphins can jump very high.

على سبيل المثال، يمكن للدلافين أن تقفز عاليًا جدًا.

⑤ **Solutions: Ideas to help fix a problem**

حلول: أفكار للمساعدة في إصلاح مشكلة.

▶ Ex: To help these animals, stop pollution.

لمساعدة هذه الحيوانات، أوقف التلوث.

⑥ **A Conclusion: This is the end of your report.**

خاتمة: هذه هي نهاية تقريرك.

▶ Example: If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever.

إذا لم نتحرك الآن، فقد تختفي هذه الحيوانات المدهشة إلى الأبد.

Example:

The Giant Panda

Pandas are amazing animals. They are in danger of disappearing. Pandas are big and fluffy. They are black and white. They live in the mountains of China. Pandas are in danger because people cut down too many trees. To help pandas, we should stop cutting down trees. If we work together, we can help the giant pandas.

الباندا العملاقة

حيوانات الباندا هي حيوانات مدهشة. إنها معرضة لخطر الاختفاء. حيوانات الباندا كبيرة الحجم وكثيفة الفرو. ولونها أبيض وأسود. وهي تعيش في جبال الصين. الباندا في خطر لأن الناس يقطعون الكثير من الأشجار. لمساعدة الباندا، يجب أن نتوقف عن قطع الأشجار. إذا عملنا معًا، يمكننا مساعدة الباندا العملاقة.



- A **collage** is an artwork made by cutting and pasting photos, paper, cloth, or drawings on a page.

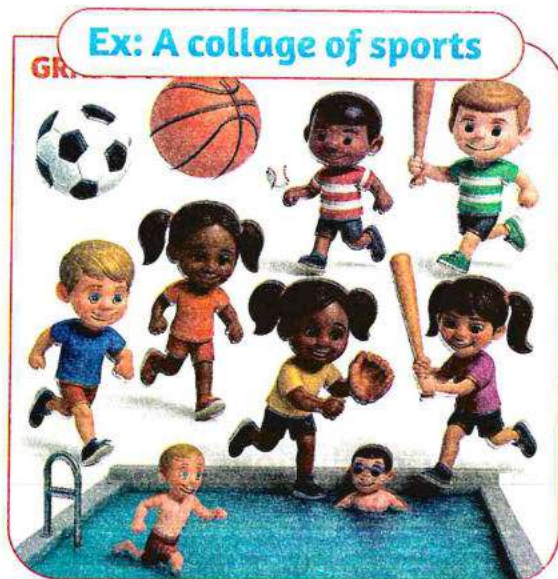
(كولاج): هو عمل فني يتم صنعه عن طريق قص ولصق الصور، أو الورق، أو القماش، أو الرسومات على صفحة.

1. Find and cut out photos.

ابحث عن صور وقصّها

2. Glue them together.

ألصقها معًا



Exercises

on

Lessons

4
& 5

1

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

danger - trees - mountains - save

Pandas are super cool bears! They're big, black, and white. Pandas live high up in the ① of China. But pandas are in ② because people are cutting down too many ③ where they live. People should stop cutting down too many trees. If we all work together, we can ④ these amazing Giant Pandas!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dolphins and whales are animals.
a) sea b) river c) lake d) mountain
2. Fishermen use fishing to catch fish.
a) mats b) hats c) nets d) chairs
3. We must stop to save animals and nature.
a) fishing b) pollution c) swimming d) playing
4. Some animals lose their because of pollution.
a) toys b) legs c) skins d) habitats
5. animals need safe places to live.
a) Dangerous b) Endangered c) Bad d) Strong
6. The students should calm when the teacher is in the classroom.
a) remain b) protect c) stop d) sing

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Many amazing animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever; they are called endangered species. The Arabian Leopard in Egypt is very rare because people build homes in its habitat. The Red Sea Dugong is also **endangered** due to pollution and fishing nets.

To help these precious animals, we must protect their homes and stop pollution. We also need to create safe areas and teach others about them. If we act now, these wonderful animals can be saved from disappearing forever.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The underlined word "**endangered**" means
a) safe b) at risk c) common d) strong
2. The text is mainly about
a) pets b) wild animals c) animals in danger d) farm animals

B Answer the following questions:

3. What makes the Arabian Leopard endangered?

▶

4. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The wildlife (face) many problems.

2. Many animals around the world (be) in danger.

3. The Arabian Leopard (live) in the Middle East.

4. Less than 200 beautiful (cat) remain in the wild.

5. People sometimes (cuts) down too many trees for their homes.

6. The Red Sea Dugong (eat) sea grass in the ocean.

5 Read and match.**A****B**

1. Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever.

a. title

2. The Arabian Leopard is very rare in the Middle East.

b. introduction

3. Endangered Animals

c. solution

4. To help these animals, we must protect their homes.

d. example

6 Write a report about an endangered animal.

- ▶ 1. First, choose an animal.
 2. Then, research facts about it.
 3. After that, write your report.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 3

Main Vocabulary

bear	دب	cages	أقفاص
big ears	آذان كبيرة	challenges	تحديات
elephant	فيل	clever	ذكى
giraffe	زرافة	danger	خطر
long tail	ذيل طويل	entrance	مدخل
monkey	قرود	footprints	آثار أقدام
sharp claws	مخالب حادة	forest officers	ضباط الغابات - حراس الغابات
spotted coat	فرو منقط	pets	حيوانات أليفة
striped coat	فرو مخطط	rabbits	أرانب
thick fur	فرو سميك	spaces	مساحات - فضاءات
trunk	خرطوم	vets	أطباء بيطريون
zebra	حمار وحشي	wild	بري

Pronunciation



Blending Sounds دمج الأصوات

● ما معنى «دمج الأصوات»؟

- حرفين ساكنين أو أكثر يمتزجان معًا بسلاسة عند النطق.
- يمكنك سماع صوت كل حرف ساكن بوضوح ضمن المجموعة المدمجة.

Examples:

fr	pl	dr
		
frown حُزن - غُيوس	frog ضفدع	plane طائرة
		
play يلعب	dress فستان	drink يشرب

Grammar Study



(Adjectives) Comparison المقارنة

Comparative degree:

● We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things.

تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء وهكذا.

نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than من).

▶ Horses are faster **than** camels.



Dictation:

birds	كهف
cages	ذكي
challenges	خطر
forest officer	مدخل
pet	آثار أقدام
rabbit	ثعلب
spaces	يصطاد
vet	أخطاء
wild	مريض
zoos	خدعة
animals	ضعيف
areas	حكيم
because	أقدام
facts	أرض
gentle	حفرة / ثقب
habitats	درس
important	علامات
Middle East	معاني
protect	خطأ
reason	عبرة / أخلاقي
remain	جبل
safe	قمة

Practice 5 on Unit 3

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Nadia's dad works as a forest (teacher - guide - driver).
2. Lions often hunt at (night - morning - afternoon).
3. learns about animals from a (book - TV program - friend).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

wild - safe - guards - Vets

Sara : Do animals need help?

Adam : Yes! We help them be ①

Sara : What about zoo animals?

Adam : They need big places and food. ② help them.

Sara : And ③ animals?

Adam : Their homes get smaller. They need clean water. Park ④ help them.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

An old lion was too weak to hunt. He decided on a trick. He lay in his cave, pretending to be very sick, and called for visitors. Many animals went in, but none came out; the lion ate them. A wise fox came near. He saw many footprints going into the cave, but none left. The fox asked the lion how he felt. The lion asked him to come in. The fox replied, "I see animals go in, but none come out. I learn from others' mistakes!" The wise fox then ran away safely.

A Answer the following questions:

1. Why couldn't the old lion hunt?

2. What did the wise fox see near the cave?



B Choose the correct answer:

3. The lion pretended to be (strong - hungry - sick).

4. Many animals went into the cave, but (the fox - none - some) came out.

5. The fox learned from (the lion - his friends - others' mistakes).

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Animals in danger of disappearing forever are called (common species - pets - endangered species).

2. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in (China - Egypt - India).

3. Is a giraffe (taller - tall - talking) than a zebra?

4. Dugongs are in danger because of (clean water - pollution - good food).

5. Elephants are (big - bigger - bigger) than monkeys.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. watch - a - I - program - about - TV - animals.



2. visitors - animals - see - do - What?



3. is - It - lions - see - amazing - to.



4. does - like - Mona - Why - pet - her?



5. for - should - We - care - animals - all.



Practice 6 on Unit 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Zoo animals need (**more water** - special attention - less space - cages).
2. (**Monkeys** - Elephants - Zebras - Birds) need bigger spaces to move around.
3. Lions eat a lot of food to stay (**stronger** - faster - healthier - smaller).
4. (**Farmers** - Vets - Guides - Owners) often check the health of zoo animals.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The (**lion** - giraffe - elephant - bear) has a very long neck.
2. Climbing the mountain was one of the biggest (**changes** - challenges - tricks - guides) in my life.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

spotted - striped - claws - sharp

When you visit the forest, you can see different wild animals. The giraffe has a long neck and a ① coat, while the zebra has a black and white ② coat. The lion has strong paws and very ③ teeth and ④ The elephant's trunk helps it eat leaves and spray water on its back.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali visits a forest park with his class. A forest guide shows them different animals. The elephant is taller than all of them. The fox looks clever and hides near a rock. The forest guide talks about endangered animals like the Arabian leopard. He says pollution and hunting make them disappear. Ali feels sad but wants to help. He says, 'We can make a difference!'

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali takes to the forest park.
a) his family b) his class c) his neighbor d) his cousin

2. The Arabian leopard in danger because of

- a) eating too much
- b) living in a zoo
- c) hunting
- d) sleeping a lot

B Answer the following questions:

3. What does the forest guide do? ➤

4. What does Ali learn about the fox? ➤

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Elephants are (big) than monkeys.

2. He is (tall) than his brother.

3. Marwa is (lazy) than her sister.

4. Lions are (brave) than zebras.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1. The drawing competition had one boy and one girl winner. ()
- 2. Wanda was present at the prize ceremony. ()

B Answer the following questions:

- 1. Who announced the drawing competition? ➤
- 2. How many dress drawings were on the wall? ➤

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1. The arabian Leopard is an endangered animal ➤

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your Pet"



like - parrot - daily

Review 1 | On Unit 1-2-3

Practice 5 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. A camel lives in the (forest - farm - desert - lake).
2. A camel has (long - short - tiny - thin) legs.
3. The camel's thick (feather - fur - scales - skin) keeps it warm.
4. People use camels for (swimming - flying - traveling - climbing) in the desert.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Jingling-Smelling - Singing - Coins) is a light, ringing sound.
2. He is (nice - greedy - great - good). He always wants everything.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

famous - people - catch - grow

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can ① rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen ② thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very ③ About one and a half million ④ live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hi! I'm Judy. I'm ten years old. I'm in grade four. I live a healthy life. I do a lot of sport at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes a **delicious** banana milkshake!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Judy is (healthy - sad - sick - ill).

Review

1

2. The underlined word "delicious" means (bad - yummy - hot - cold).

B Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Judy? ▶

4. Why does Judy like walking? ▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My sister usually (go) to the market on Saturdays.

2. The weather today is (cold) than yesterday.

3. He (don't) live in Cairo.

4. It's (legal) to smoke in a hospital.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. She wore a different dress every day. ()

2. Wanda was laughed at by many girls. ()

B Answer the following questions:

1. What kind of dress did Wanda always wear? ▶

2. How many dress drawings were on the wall? ▶

7 Punctuate the following:

1. My friend nader lives in giza ▶

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"I help my community"

collect - plant- feed

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 8 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. (Playing games - A healthy breakfast - Drinking juice - Reading a book) gives you energy for the day.
2. You should drink plenty of (soda - milk - water - tea).
3. A good way to move your body is by (watching TV - sleeping - playing outside - eating snacks).
4. Healthy choices make your body feels (tired - sleepy - weak - strong).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Weaving carpets is a famous (craft - clock - festival - outfit).
2. Bears have sharp (beaks - feathers - hair - claws) on their feet.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shower - ears - trunk - animals

Elephants are the biggest land animals on Earth! They have huge ① _____, thick skin, and a very long nose called a ② _____. Their trunks are amazing! Elephants use them to breathe, drink water, pick up food, and even spray water for a ③ _____. They live in groups called herds. They are very smart and friendly ④ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Pollution is when our air, water, and land become dirty. Smoke from cars and factories makes the air bad to breathe. Throwing trash on the ground or in rivers makes our water and land unhealthy for plants and animals. This can hurt fish, birds, and even us! We can help stop pollution by recycling, walking or biking more, and not littering. Let's keep our Earth clean and happy for everyone!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "This" refers to (clean air - pollution - healthy

Review 1

plants - happy animals).

2. Smoke from cars makes (water - land - air - plants) dirty.

B Answer the following questions:

3. What makes our water and land unhealthy? ►

4. Name two things we can do to help stop pollution. ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. (does) lions hunt at night?
2. The local park (needing) more trash bins.
3. The blue dress is (nice) than the red one.
4. They (not throw) trash on the ground.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda was a noisy girl. ()
2. Maddie spoke up to protect Wanda. ()

B Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Wanda say the dresses were kept? ►
2. Who annoyed Wanda every morning? ►

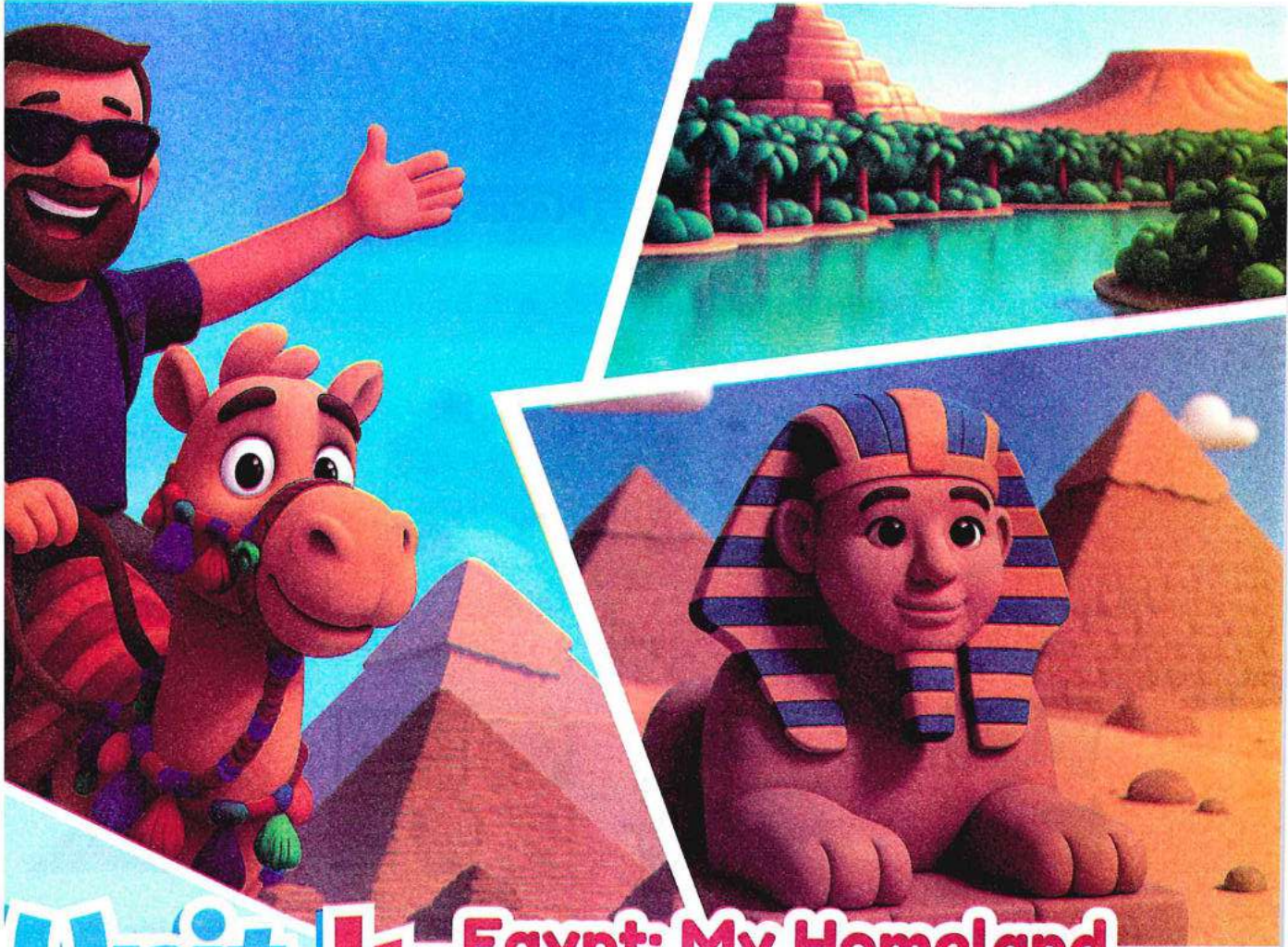
7 Punctuate the following:

1. There are big hotels and buildings in cairo ►

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"The Upper Egypt"

sugar cane harvest - traditional songs - turbans



Unit 4

Egypt: My Homeland

مصر وطني

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Describe famous places in Egypt in terms of what you can see and do there.
- Talk about locations using prepositions of place.
- Ask and answer questions about different places.

Listening

- Understand conversations about tourist attractions.
- Recognize pronunciations of /p/ and /b/ sounds.

Reading

- Read and understand descriptions of famous places.
- Answer comprehension questions based on reading information in travel leaflets.
- Read numbers up to a billion.

Writing

- Create a basic travel leaflet.
- Complete sentences using prepositions of place.
- Write a blog post about a famous place.

Lesson 1

Places in Egypt



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



tour guide

مرشد سياحي



tourists

سياح



gifts

هدايا



coins

عملات معدنية



treasures

كنوز



history

تاريخ



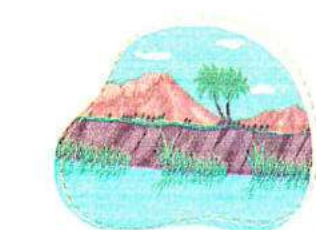
pictures

صور



Pyramids

الأهرامات



Nile River

نهر النيل



Cairo Tower

برج القاهرة



Siwa Oasis

واحة سيوة



Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar

سوق خان الخليلي



Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

country	بلد / دولة	boats	قوارب
Cairo	القاهرة	after	بعد
camel	جمل	there	هناك
here	هنا	too	أيضاً
many	كثير / عديد	stones	أحجار
top	قمة		

Wh- Words كلمات استفهام

How	كيف	Who	من
What	ماذا / ما	Where	أين
When	متى	Which	أي

Prepositions حروف الجر

at the Pyramids	عند الأهرامات / في الأهرامات	talking about	التحدث عن
in Egypt	في مصر	full of	مليء بـ

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

This is my first time in Egypt.	هذه أول مرة لي في مصر.	Welcome to Egypt!	أهلاً بك في مصر!
Nice to meet you.	سررت بلقائك. - تشرفت بمعرفتك.	I like to visit the Pyramids.	أحب زيارة الأهرامات.
Are there more places to visit?	هل هناك المزيد من الأماكن لزيارتها؟	You will like it here!	ستحب المكان هنا!
That sounds fun!	يبدو هذا ممتعاً!	Great!	رائع! - عظيم!
giant stones	أحجار عملاقة	busy market	سوق مزدحم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
sail	يبحر	sailed		sound	يبدو	sounded
visit	يزور	visited		want	يريد	wanted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
buy	يشترى	bought		can	يستطيع - يمكن	could
choose	يختار	chose		has	يملك	had
meet	يقابل	met		ride	يركب	rode
take	يأخذ	took		write	يكتب	wrote

Listen and read

Exploring Egypt with Ali!

استكشف مصر مع علي!

Ali and John are at the Pyramids talking about Egypt's amazing places.

Ali : Hi, I'm Ali! I work as a **tour guide** in Egypt.
Welcome to Egypt!

John : Nice to meet you, Ali! I'm John. This is my first time in Egypt.

Ali : You will like it here! The **Pyramids** are very nice. **Tourists** take many **pictures** here.

John : Great! Can I **ride a camel**, too?



- Ali** : Yes! Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun!
- John** : What can we visit after the Pyramids?
- Ali** : Next, we can visit the **Grand Egyptian Museum**. It has many treasures to see, and history too!
- John** : I love history! Are there more places to visit?
- Ali** : Yes! We can go to **Khan Al-Khalili** to buy some **gifts**.
- John** : That sounds fun!

علي وجون في الأهرامات يتحدثان عن الأماكن المدهشة في مصر.

- علي** : مرحباً، أنا علي! أنا أعمل كمرشد سياحي في مصر. أهلاً بك في مصر!
- جون** : سررت بلقائك يا علي! أنا جون. هذه أول مرة لي في مصر.
- علي** : ستحب المكان هنا! الأهرامات جميلة جداً. يلتقط السياح الكثير من الصور هنا.
- جون** : رائع! هل يمكنني ركوب جمل أيضاً؟
- علي** : نعم! الكثير من الناس يركبون الجمال بالقرب من الأهرامات. إنه أمر ممتع!
- جون** : ما الذي يمكننا زيارته بعد الأهرامات؟
- علي** : بعد ذلك، يمكننا زيارة المتحف المصري الكبير. إن به العديد من الكنوز التي تستحق المشاهدة، وبه تاريخ أيضاً!
- جون** : أنا أحب التاريخ! هل هناك المزيد من الأماكن لزيارتها؟
- علي** : نعم! يمكننا الذهاب إلى خان الخليلي لشراء بعض الهدايا.
- جون** : يبدو هذا ممتعاً!

The Lesson Notes

Telling about your job:

الإخبار عن وظيفتك:

I work as

أعمل ك

Example:

▶ I work as a teacher.

Polite request:

الطلب المهدب:

① Can I + base verb

هل يمكنني أن + مصدر الفعل؟

Example:

▶ Can I ride a camel, please?

② I want to + base verb

أريد أن + مصدر الفعل

I want to ride a camel, please.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text using the words in the box:

Museum - gifts - Pyramids - camels

Ali is a tour guide. He meets John in Egypt. They are at the ① where people take pictures and ride ② John likes riding camels. Next, they will visit the Grand Egyptian ③ to see old treasures. Then, they will go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy ④ John thinks his trip sounds very fun.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sarah visited Luxor, a city full of ancient temples and history. She explored the vast Karnak Temple and enjoyed a peaceful boat ride on the Nile River. It was amazing to see all the old statues and grand buildings from ancient Egypt. Sarah even took a hot air balloon ride over the West Bank at sunrise, seeing everything from above! It was a truly wonderful trip.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Sarah visited

a) Cairo

b) Aswan

c) Luxor

d) Siwa Oasis

2. The underlined word "peaceful" means

a) noisy

b) calm

c) exciting

d) fast

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Sarah enjoy doing on the Nile River?



4. What did Sarah do at sunrise?



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. John said, "This is my time in Egypt!"

- a) after b) here c) first d) too

2. You can find many to buy at Khan Al-Khalili.

- a) boats b) camels c) gifts d) coins

3. The Grand Egyptian Museum has many to see.

- a) boats b) camels c) treasures d) markets

4. A person whose job is to show visitors famous places is called a

- a) tourist b) driver c) tour guide d) seller

5. Very old and valuable items found in ancient tombs are often called

- a) gifts b) pictures c) treasures d) boats

6. The Pyramids are built from very giant

- a) camels b) markets c) stones d) rivers

7. If you want to go shopping for souvenirs, you will visit a/an

- a) museum b) oasis c) bazaar d) tower

8. Egypt is my favorite

- a) city b) village c) country d) museum

4 Punctuate the following:

1. What do tourists do in egypt



2. What will ali and john visit?



3. I like to visit the pyramids



4. We get water from the Nile river.



5. Look at the tall Cairo Tower



5 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Places to visit in Egypt"



► Pyramids - Cairo Tower - Egyptian Museum

Handwriting practice area with 10 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Lesson 2

My City

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

connected	على تواصل	living room	غرفة معيشة
favorite	مفضل	places	أماكن
lamp	مصباح		

Unit 4

Prepositions حروف الجر

next to the hospital

بجانب المستشفى

teach us about our history

يُعَلِّمُنَا عَنْ تَارِيخِنَا

behind it is a museum

خلفه يوجد متحف

learn from books

نتعلم من الكتب

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

feel better

يشعر بتحسن / يتحسن

favorite place

مكان مفضل

stay connected

يبقى على تواصل

sick people

مرضى

make our city a great place to live

يجعلون مدينتنا مكانًا رائعًا للعيش

meet friends

يقابلون الأصدقاء

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

borrow يستعير/يستلف

Past

borrowed

Present

happen

يحدث

Past

happened

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

feel

يشعر

Past

felt

Present

teach

يعلم

Past

taught

Definitions تعريفات

School

: A place where I learn.

مدرسة

مكان أتعلم فيه.

Hospital

: A place where we go when we are sick.

مستشفى

مكان نذهب إليه عندما نكون مرضى.

Office

: A place where my mom and dad work.

مكتب

مكان يعمل فيه أبي وأمي.

Post office مكتب بريد	: a place where we send letters. مكان نرسل فيه الرسائل.
Shopping mall مركز تسوق (مول)	: a place where I buy clothes and shoes. مكان أشتري فيه الملابس والأحذية.
Supermarket سوبر ماركت	: A place where we buy food. مكان نشترى فيه الطعام.
Park حديقة	: A place where we enjoy and see trees, grass, and flowers. مكان نستمتع فيه ونرى الأشجار والعشب والزهور.
Museum متحف	: A place where we see very old things. مكان نرى فيه أشياء قديمة جداً.
Library مكتبة	: A place where we read or borrow books. مكان نقرأ فيه الكتب أو نستعيرها.

Read and learn

The Places We Go in Our City

Our city has many important places that help people every day.

One important place is the **school**. **Students** go there to learn and meet friends. **Teachers** help them, and the **library** has many **books** to read or **borrow**.

Another important place is the **hospital**. **Doctors** and **nurses** help sick people feel better. Next to the hospital is the **post office**, where people send **letters** and **packages** to stay **connected**.

The **shopping mall** has many **stores** and **restaurants**. People buy things and eat there. Behind it is a **museum** with **treasures** that teach us about our **history**.

These places make our city a great place to live.



الأماكن التي نذهب إليها في مدينتنا

مدينتنا بها العديد من الأماكن الهامة التي تساعد الناس كل يوم. أحد هذه الأماكن الهامة هو المدرسة. يذهب الطلاب إلى المدرسة للتعلم ولقاء الأصدقاء. ويساعدهم المعلمون، وتحتوي المكتبة على العديد من الكتب للقراءة أو الاستعارة. مكان مهم آخر هو المستشفى. الأطباء والمرضون يساعدون المرضى ليشفروا بتحسن. بجانب المستشفى يوجد مكتب البريد، حيث يرسل الناس الرسائل والطرود للبقاء على تواصل. مركز التسوق (المول) به العديد من المتاجر والمطاعم. يشتري الناس الأشياء ويأكلون هناك. يوجد خلفه متحف به كنوز تعلمنا عن تاريخنا. هذه الأماكن تجعل مدينتنا مكاناً رائعاً للعيش.

GRAMMAR STUDY



Prepositions of Place حروف الجر الخاصة

We use prepositions of place to say where something is:

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنقول أين يوجد شيء ما:

Prepositions of place



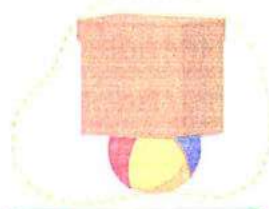
in

في



on

على



under

تحت



behind

خلف



above

أعلى - فوق



next to

بجوار



between

بين



in front of

أمام

Examples:

- ▶ My family picture is **on** the wall.
- ▶ My cat is **behind** the blue chair.
- ▶ My ball is **under** the table.
- ▶ The lamp is **next to** the TV.
- ▶ The table is **in front of** the TV.
- ▶ The plant is **between** a book and a notebook.

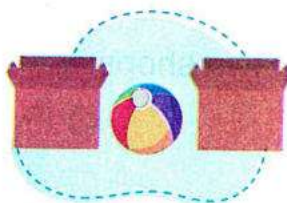


Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Write the correct preposition under each picture:



.....



.....



.....



.....



.....



.....



.....



.....

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Student's
Book**shopping mall - borrow - sick - school**

There are different places in my town. Young children go to ① every morning to learn. They can ② books from the library. When people feel ③, they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the ④ where many shops sell different things.

3

Choose the correct answer:

- The park is of the museum.
a) next to b) in front c) under d) behind
- We go to the when we are sick.
a) hospital b) office c) school d) supermarket
- My house is two shops.
a) under b) next c) in d) between
- We buy food at the
a) museum b) park c) supermarket d) office
- The chair is the door.
a) behind b) in c) on d) under
- I learn in my
a) post office b) park c) school d) hospital
- That village is to a big city.
a) in front b) next c) in d) behind
- I buy clothes and shoes at a
a) shopping mall b) post office c) museum d) school
- The book is the bag.
a) between b) in front c) in d) next

10. There's a kite our house.
 a) above b) under c) in front d) between
11. We send letters at the
 a) hospital b) shopping mall c) supermarket d) post office
12. The ball is the table.
 a) under b) next c) in d) in front
13. The bag is the desk.
 a) between b) in front c) next d) on
14. There's a tree in my house.
 a) next to b) under c) above d) front of

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. It is (behind) a yellow house and a brown house.
2. The tent is (between) to the car.
3. The couch is (on) the living room.
4. My house is (next) the tall house and the tree.
5. There are 4 chairs and a table (on) the balcony.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. i live in a village next to the nile.

▶

2. Which school does zain learn at

▶

3. marwa and nada go to school on foot.

▶

4. when did he go to aswan?

▶

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



Numbers up to a billion
الأعداد حتى المليار

1 2 3 4
5 7 8 9

100

a hundred

مائة

1000

a thousand

ألف

10,000

ten thousand

عشرة آلاف

100,000

a hundred thousand

مائة ألف

1,000,000

a million

مليون

10,000,000

ten million

عشرة مليون

100,000,000

a hundred million

مائة مليون

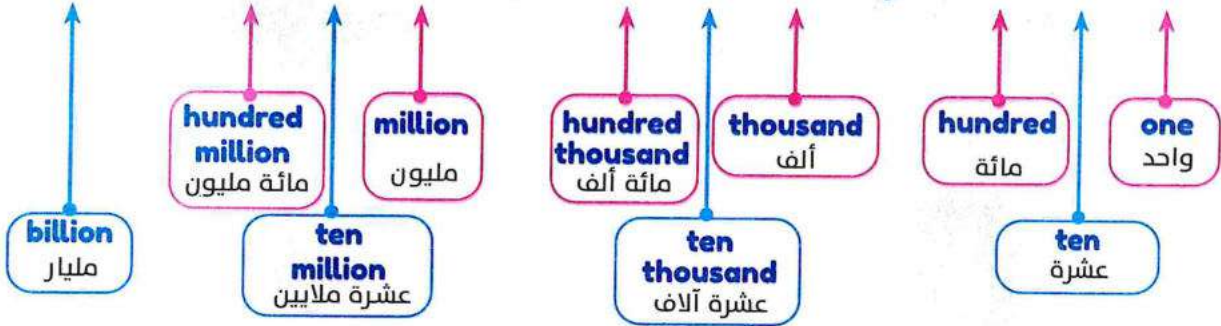
100,000,000

a billion

مليار

Read and learn

1, 000, 000, 000



If we need to say the number **8,199,590,341**, we say:

"Eight billion, one hundred ninety-nine million, five hundred ninety thousand, three hundred and forty-one."

يُنطق هذا الرقم كالتالي:

"ثمانية مليارات، ومائة وتسعة وتسعون مليونًا، وخمسمائة وتسعون ألفًا، وثلاثمائة وواحد وأربعون."

Notice:

A billion is a thousand million: **1,000,000,000**.

المليار هو ألف مليون **1,000,000,000**.

Pronunciation



The /p/ and /b/ sounds

The letter "p" is voiceless. To say it, press your lips together and blow out air. The letter "b" is voiced. To say it, press your lips together and use your voice.

الحرف "p" هو حرف مهموس (غير صوتي). لنطقه، اضغط شفطيك معًا وانفخ الهواء خارجًا. أما الحرف "b" فهو حرف مجهور (صوتي). لنطقه، اضغط شفطيك معًا واستخدم صوتك أثناء إخراج الحرف.

Unit 4

Examples:

The /b/ sound



beak
منقار



bin
صندوق قمامة



bear
دب



The /p/ sound



peak
قمة



pin
دبوس



pear
كمثرى

Listen and read



- ① The ducks swim in the **pond**.
- ② Mom cooks eggs in the **pan**.
- ③ The **bat** flies at night.
- ④ We throw our trash in the **bin**.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. 1,000,000 is one million. ()
2. 50,000 is five hundred thousand. ()

3. 100 is one hundred. (.....)
4. 700,000,000 is seven million. (.....)
5. 2,500 is two thousand five hundred. (.....)
6. 10,000,000 is one hundred million. (.....)
7. 3,000,000,000 is three billion. (.....)
8. 90 is ninety thousand. (.....)
9. 45,000,000 is forty-five million. (.....)
10. 1,000,000,000 is one hundred million. (.....)

2 Read and write the following numbers in words:

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------|----------------|---------|
| 1. 1,000,000 | ▶ | 2. 1000 | ▶ |
| 3. 10,000,000 | ▶ | 4. 100,000 | ▶ |
| 5. 1,000,000,000 | ▶ | 6. 100,000,000 | ▶ |
| 7. 100 | ▶ | 8. 10,000 | ▶ |

3 Read and complete the text:

1. If we need to say the number 5,321,876,400, we say, "Five, three hundred twenty-one, eight hundred seventy-six, four"
2. If we need to say the number 7,050,123,678, we say, "Seven, fifty, one hundred twenty-three, six, and seventy-eight".

4 Choose the correct word.

1. I want to eat a (bear - pear).
2. Put the trash in the (bin - pin).
3. Put the eggs in the (ban - pan).
4. The bird has a long (beak - peak).
5. A (bat - pat) is an animal.
6. They are fishing in the (bond - pond).
7. A (big - pig) is an animal.
8. A cat is a (bet - pet).

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



monastery

دير



St. Catherine Mountain

جبل سانت كاترين



colorful rocks

مخور ملونة



salt lake

بحيرة ملح



desert

صحراء



plants

نباتات



palm trees

أشجار نخيل



dates

تمر



olive oil

زيت زيتون



daytime

النهار



sunset

غروب الشمس



night time

الليل

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

ature	مُغامرة	price	يسُغر
et	نَشْرَة / كُتَيْب	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
re	مَحَلِّي	summer clothes	مَلَابِس صَيْفِيَّة
lar	طَبِيعَة	warm clothes	مَلَابِس دَافِئَة
	شَائِع / مَحْبُوب		

Important Sentences & Expressions

جمل وتعبيرات هامة

ng the way	على طول الطريق	the natural world	العالم الطبيعي
the top	على (عند) القمة	the historical places	الأماكن التاريخية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
يُحْجِز	booked	يتسلق	climbed
book		climb	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
يُخْضِر - يَجْلِب	brought	يرتدي	wore
يسبح	swam	wear	



Read and learn



By Tarek

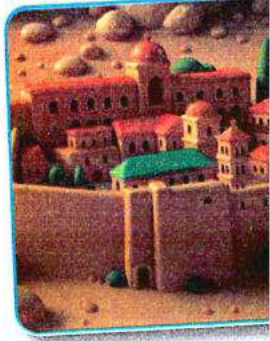
March 15, 2024

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb and wear warm clothes because it's cold.

Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures.

At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history.

St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.



غلم طارق

1 مارس 2024

العديد من السياح جبل سانت كاترين في جنوب سيناء بمصر. إنهم يستيقظون مبكرًا للتسلق،
من ملابس دافئة لأن الجو بارد.

الطريق، يرون صخورًا ملونة ونباتات صغيرة، وبعضهم يلتقطون الصور.

يزورون الدير القديم ويتعلمون عن تاريخه.

'ترين وجهة شهيرة لمحبي الطبيعة، والمغامرة وقضاء وقت ممتع مع الأصدقاء
'لناس التعرف على التاريخ والاستمتاع بالعالم الطبيعي.

book

bring
swim

English 4

How to Write a Good Blog

كيف تكتب منشور مدونة جيد

What makes a blog post super cool?

ما الذي يجعل منشور المدونة "رائعًا جدًا"؟

① **A Clear Title:** This is like the name of your story!

عنوان واضح: مثل اسم قصتك!

▶ Example: **A Visit to the Zoo**

② **A Writer's Name:** This means who wrote it!

اسم الكاتب: من كتبه!

▶ Example: **By Marwa**

③ **A Date:** This tells us when you wrote it!

التاريخ: متى كتبه!

▶ Example: **May 14, 2025**

④ **Pictures/Drawings:** They make your blog post fun to look at!

الصور/الرسومات: تجعل منشور المدونة الخاص بك شكله لطيف!



⑤ **Interesting Details:** They make it exciting and make people want to read more.

تفاصيل شيقة: تجعله مثيرًا وتجعل الناس يرغبون في قراءة المزيد.

▶ Example: **The monkey ran after the girl.**

⑥ **Descriptive Words:** The words that create a picture in our head!

الكلمات الوصفية: الكلمات التي ترسم صورة في أذهاننا!

▶ Example: **The big monkey suddenly ran and jumped after the little girl.**



A visit to St. Catherine Mountain زيارة لجبل سانت كاترين

The writer's name

اسم الكاتب

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Date

التاريخ

Details

التفاصيل

Many **tourists** visit **St. Catherine Mountain** in **South Sinai, Egypt**. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold.

Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some **take pictures**.

At the top, they visit the **old monastery** and learn about its history.

St. Catherine is a popular place for **nature**, **adventure**, and **fun** with friends and family. People can **learn** about **history** and enjoy the natural world.



Descriptive words

كلمات وصفية

Pictures

صور

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

adventure - climb - top - South Sinai

Last week, my family went on an exciting trip to ① It was a real ②! We decided to ③ Mount Sinai early in the morning. The view from the ④ was absolutely amazing. We also visited a local market and met many friendly people there. It was a wonderful experience!

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello! My name is Karim. Last month, my family and I went on an amazing trip in Cairo. First, we visited the Pyramids of Giza. They are so big and old! We also saw the huge Sphinx, which has a lion's body and a human head. It was a sunny day. Later, we went to the Egyptian Museum in Tahrir Square. Inside, we saw shiny gold treasures from King Tut. It was very exciting to learn about ancient Egypt and its history!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Karim went on an amazing trip last month to
 a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Cairo d) Alexandria
2. Karim saw
 a) New cars b) Shiny gold treasures
 c) Modern art d) Live animals

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where are the Pyramids and the Sphinx located?

 ▶
4. Give a suitable title to the text.

 ▶

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. In winter, you need to wear
 a) warm clothes b) summer clothes c) light shirts d) swimsuits
2. The Pyramids are a very place to visit.
 a) popular b) local c) small d) hidden
3. The museum showed us many amazing
 a) historical places b) the natural world
 c) cartoons d) future cities
4. My brother loves to explore when we go hiking.
 a) nature b) price c) book d) food

Unit 4

5. Please your swimming suit to the beach.
 a) bring b) wore c) ate d) looked
6. We saw pretty flowers to the temple.
 a) along the way b) at the top c) under the seat
 d) next to the door
7. What is the of this delicious juice?
 a) price b) leaflet c) color d) size
8. The hotel gave us a with a map of the city.
 a) leaflet b) adventure c) tree d) game

4 Punctuate the following:

1. why should we protect animals

.....

2. People can learn about history in luxor

.....

3. china has one of the world's largest populations

.....

5 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"A trip to museum"

▶ treasures - family- history - ancient

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 4

Main Vocabulary

tour guide	مرشد سياحي	adventure	مغامرة
treasures	كنوز	leaflet	نشرة - كُتَيْب
Pyramids	الأهرامات	local	محلي
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	nature	طبيعة
country	دولة	popular	شائع - محبوب
library	مكتبة	salt lake	بحيرة ملح
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	summer clothes	ملابس صيفية
stores	متاجر	monastery	دير
museum	متحف	desert	صحراء
packages	طرود	olive oil	زيت زيتون
borrow	يستعير	sunset	غروب الشمس
restaurants	مطاعم	hundred	مائة
post office	مكتب بريد	thousand	ألف
feel	يشعر	million	مليون
teach	يُعَلِّم	billion	مليار

Pronunciation



The /p/ and /b/ sounds

الحرف "p" هو حرف مهموس (غير صوتي). لنطقه، اضغط شفتيك معًا وانفخ الهواء خارجًا. أما الحرف "b" فهو حرف مجهور (صوتي). لنطقه، اضغط شفتيك معًا واستخدم صوتك أثناء إخراج الحرف.

Examples:



Grammar Study

Prepositions of place



Dictation:

gifts	كنوز
history	سياح
pyramids	هدايا
boats	دولة
sail (v.)	نهر النيل
library	برج القاهرة
visit (v.)	متاجر
choose	يبدو
museum	يأخذ
ride (v.)	مركز تسوق
school	يشعر
treasures	واحة سيوة
leaflet	بجوار
letters	بين
teach	أمام
popular	خلف
under	مليار
above	الليل
monastery	مغامرة
desert	مخور ملونة

Practice 9 on Unit 4

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Teachers are amazing (**hospitals** - **guides** - **hotels**).
2. They teach us and make learning fun with (**games** - **desks** - **doors**) and activities
3. Teachers also help children be (**poor** - **lazy** - **kind**) and work together.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

market - camel - triangles - museum

Hassan : Hi, Mark! Do you like Egypt?

Mark : Hi, Hassan! Yes, it's cool! But I don't know what to see.

Hassan : Oh, you must see the Pyramids! They are super big

①

Mark : Wow! The Pyramids! Can you ride a ② there?

Hassan : Yes, you can! And then visit the ③ to see old treasures.

Mark : This sounds amazing! What else is fun to do?

Hassan : You should also visit the ④, it's loud and fun with colorful things.

Mark : Thanks, Hassan!

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar, and I live in beautiful Aswan, Egypt. It's special because it's right by the wonderful Nile River. Every morning, I love seeing the sun shine on the water. My favorite place is Elephantine Island, full of green palm trees and old ruins. We take a peaceful felucca boat there. Aswan truly is a beautiful gem!

Term 1

A Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Omar live?

▶

2. What makes Aswan special to Omar?

▶

B Choose the correct answer:

1. Omar likes to see the sun shine on the (mountains - water - buildings - trees)

2. (The High Dam - Elephantine Island - The market - A museum) is Omar's favorite place.

3. Omar uses a felucca which is a (car - bus - train - boat).

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. My bedroom is my favorite (place - school - park) in my home.

2. The (Pyramids - mountains - river) of Giza are famous in Egypt.

3. We eat dinner in the (kitchen - bathroom - garden) every evening.

4. My city has a big (lake - library - desert) where I can read books.

5. The Egyptian Museum has many old (cars - treasures - toys).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. Museum - The Egyptian - has - treasures - shiny - gold.

▶

2. in - box - The cat - is - front - the - of.

▶

3. The - has - mall - stores - many - shopping.

▶

4. send - People - letters - connected - to stay .

▶

5. people - How - help - hospitals - do - sick?

▶ ?

Practice 10 on Unit 4

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Mom buys fresh bread at the (supermarket - toy shop - bakery - bookshop).
2. The toy shop sells toy (cars - books - bread - shoes).
3. In the park, there are (swings and slides - white boards and desks - toy cars - fresh bread).
4. The town is a (sad - great - boring - noisy) place to live.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. You can take a boat ride on the (museum - Nile River - park - supermarket).
2. You can see huge statues at (Karnak - McDonald's - Dahab - the cinema) Temple.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Library - fresh - sea - beautiful

Alexandria is a ① city in Egypt. It is right next to the Mediterranean ② You can walk along the Corniche, which is a long road next to the water. There are many old places to see, like the Citadel of Qaitbay. It's an old fort by the sea. You can also visit the ③ of Alexandria, a very big place with lots of books. People love to eat ④ seafood here.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is a wonderful country! Many people from all over the world come to visit us as tourists. They love seeing the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. The Egyptian Museum in Cairo has King Tut's gold treasures. Many tourists ride boats on the long Nile River. Others swim in the Red Sea with colorful fish. Tourism helps Egyptians get jobs and keeps our old places safe and beautiful for everyone to enjoy!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. (Teachers - Tourists - Builders - Doctors) visit Egypt from all over the world.

2. We see (modern cars - King Tut's gold treasures - new clothes - long trees) in the Egyptian Museum.

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where can tourists swim with colorful fish? ►

4. How does tourism help Egyptians? ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The little bird is (behind) of the tree.
2. The pencil is (to) my pencil case.
3. The dog is sitting (in) the boy and the girl.
4. The picture is (between) the book.

6. The Story

A Read and complete the text with words from the box:

dreams - letter - unkindness - medal

Miss Mason read a ① from Wanda's dad. Wanda's family had moved to avoid ② Peggy and Maddie felt sorry when they realized Wanda's drawings were her ③ They decided to apologize in a letter and told her it was sad she didn't get her ④

B Answer the following questions:

1. Who read the letter from Wanda's father? ►
2. How did Peggy and Maddie feel after hearing what was in the letter?

7 Punctuate the following:

1. people see colorful rocks and small plants in dahab. ►

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Places to visit in my city"



Downtown - the Egyptian Museum - the River Nile



Unit 5

A Day at Work

يوم في العمل

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Talk about the uniforms and importance of different jobs.
- Use superlative adjectives in sentences.



Listening

- Understand conversations about different jobs.
- Produce long vowel sounds with silent 'e'.



Reading

- Read about jobs and answer comprehension questions.
- Identify main ideas in stories.



Writing

- Write non-fiction texts
- Change story endings

Lesson 1

Different jobs

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

jobs
وظائف

doctor

طبيب



nurse

ممرضة



teacher

مدرس



engineer

مهندس



firefighter

رجل إطفاء



police officer

ضابط شرطة

costume
أزياء

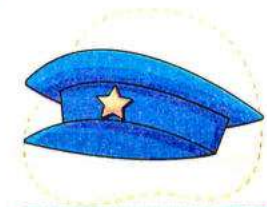
coat

بالطو - معطف



uniform

زِيّ موحد



cap

قبعة - طاقية



helmet

خوذة



vest

سترة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

patient (n.)	مريض	important	مهم
sick	مريض	different	مختلف
buildings	مباني	fires	حرائق
health	صحة		

Prepositions حروف الجر

at your job	في عملك	talk to	يتحدث إلى
-------------	---------	---------	-----------

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

Well done.	أحسنت.	talk about	يتحدث عن
save people	يُنقذ حياة الناس	help sick people	يساعد المرضى
stop fires	يُوقف (يُطفئ) الحرائق	check health	يفحص الصحة
wear a uniform	يرتدي زيّ موحد	design buildings	يصمم مباني

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

care	يُعتني - يهتم بـ	cared	يُقدم - يعرض	presented
check	يفحص	checked	يحمي	protected
design	يصمم	designed	يُنقذ	saved
help	يساعد	helped	يوقف - يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

wear	يرتدي	wore	يُكبر	grew up
------	-------	------	-------	---------



Read and learn

When I grow up ...

عندما أكبر ...



Ms. Hala is talking to her students about what they want to be when they grow up.

Ms. Hala : Good morning, dear students! Let's talk about your costumes.

Sara : I'm a **doctor**. I wear a white coat.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job?

Sara : I **help sick people** and **check their health**.

Ali : I'm an **engineer**. I wear a yellow helmet.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job?

Ali : I **design new buildings**.

Talia : I'm a nurse. I wear a blue uniform.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job?

Talia : I **help the doctors** and **care for the patients**.

Omar : I'm a **firefighter**. I wear a red uniform.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job?

Omar : I **stop fires** and **save people**.

Ms. Hala : All your jobs are really important. Well done.

الأستاذة هالة تتحدث مع طلابها حول ما يريدون أن يكونوا عندما يكبرون.

أستاذة هالة : صباح الخير يا طلابي الأعزاء! لنحدث عن أزيائكم التنكرية.

سارة : أنا طبيبة. أنا أرتدي معطفاً أبيض.

أستاذة هالة: ماذا تفعلين في وظيفتك؟

- سارة** : أساعد المرضى وأفحص صحتهم.
علي : أنا مهندس. أنا أرتدي خوذة صفراء.
أستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعل في وظيفتك؟
علي : أصمّم مباني جديدة.
تاليا : أنا ممرضة. أنا أرتدي زيًا أزرق.
أستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعلين في وظيفتك؟
تاليا : أساعد الأطباء وأعتني بالمرضى.
عمر : أنا رجل إطفاء. أنا أرتدي زيًا أزرق.
أستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعل في وظيفتك؟
عمر : أطفئ الحرائق وأنقذ الناس.
أستاذة هالة : جميع وظائفكم مهمة جدًا. أحسنتم!

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct word.

- A helps sick people.
a) doctor b) teacher c) engineer d) firefighter
- It's a firefighter's job to fires.
a) design b) check c) stop d) grow up
- Doctors often a white uniform.
a) wear b) talk c) help d) stop
- An engineer can new buildings.
a) care for b) protect c) design d) save
- Police officers people and keep them safe.
a) protect b) check c) design d) grow up
- Doctors your health if you are not well.
a) check b) stop c) stop d) wear

7. It is to have good health.
 a) sick b) important c) bad d) stupid
8. Firefighters wear a special when they work.
 a) jeans b) patient c) uniform d) health
9. A/An cares for patients in the hospital.
 a) nurse b) teacher c) police officer d) engineer
10. Doctors often wear a white
 a) cap b) coat c) helmet d) vest

2

Read the text and answer the questions:

care - check - help - wear

Doctors and nurses do very important jobs. They ① sick people and ② for patients every day. A doctor's job is to ③ your health and help you get better. They often ④ a white coat and work in hospitals. It's a job that needs a lot of care and dedication.

3

Read and complete with the words in the box:

Student's
Book**engineer - nurse - police officer - doctor - firefighter**

1. A/An wears a white coat.
2. A/An wears a white uniform and a cap.
3. A/An wears a yellow helmet and a vest.
4. A/An wears a red uniform and a helmet.
5. A/An wears a blue uniform and a cap.



4 Read and check:

What do they wear?

- | | | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|----|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. doctor | : white coat | ☐ | or | red uniform | ☐ |
| 2. engineer | : blue cap | ☐ | or | yellow helmet | ☐ |
| 3. firefighter | : red uniform | ☐ | or | white coat | ☐ |
| 4. nurse | : red helmet | ☐ | or | blue uniform | ☐ |

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Engineers are people who design and build many things. They work on roads, bridges, buildings, and machines. Some engineers work with computers, while others build homes or cars. Engineers solve problems and make our lives easier. Without engineers, we would not have safe roads, tall buildings, or modern technology. Engineers use math and science to do their work. Their job is very important.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Engineers work with
 a) books b) computers c) plants d) animals
- Engineers use in their work.
 a) history and music b) art and dance
 c) math and science d) sports and games

B Answer the following questions:

- Where do engineers use their skills?
 ►
- Why are engineers important?
 ►

6

Punctuate the following:

1. what is an engineer's job related to buildings



2. engineers design tall buildings



7

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Police Officers"**What do they do? What do they wear? Where do they work?**

Handwriting practice area with 10 horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Lesson 2

Jobs I Love!

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



mentor

مرشد تعليمي



wild animals

حيوانات برية



puppets

دُمى



shows (n.)

عروض



voice-over actor

مؤدي صوتي



wildlife photographer

مصور للحياة البرية



cartoons

الرسوم المتحركة



characters

شخصيات

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

faraway places

أماكن بعيدة

laughs (n.)

ضحكات

voice

صوت

Adjectives

صفات

fun

ممتع

shy

خجول

brave

شجاع

nice

لطيف

Unit 5

wild	بري	exciting	شيق
great	عظيم	high x low	عالي x منخفض
faraway	بعيد	fast x slow	سريع x بطيء
young	صغير	little	قليل
kind	عطوف	loud	مرتفع
helpful	متعاون	big x small	كبير x صغير
interesting	شيق - ممتع		

جمل وتعبيرات هامة Important Sentences & Expressions

for a long time	لوقت طويل	tell stories	يروى (يحكي) قصصًا
loud laughs	ضحكات مرتفعة	do shows	يقوم بعروض
do well	يفعل شيئًا بشكل جيد	enjoy the show	يستمتع بالعرض
take pictures	يلتقط صورًا	make voices	يقوم بعمل الأصوات
makes me happy	يجعلني سعيدًا		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
learn	يتعلم	learned		show	يعرض	showed	
guess	يخمن	guessed		enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	
use	يستخدم	used					

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
grow	ينمو	grew		get	يأخذ	got	
become	يصبح	became		feel	يشعر	felt	
know	يعرف	knew		make	يصنع	made	

Read and learn



Four Amazing Jobs

Noha is a **mentor**. She has a very kind job! She helps young students learn and grow. "I help shy students become brave," she says. "When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes me happy when they do well!"



Amr is a **wildlife photographer**. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

Salma works with **puppets**. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. "I do many shows for children," she says. "I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show!"

Adel is a **voice-over actor**. He has an exciting job! He makes voices for cartoons. "I can make high voices and low voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow. I make little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones!"

أربع وظائف مذهلة

نهى مرشدة تعليمية. لديها وظيفة لطيفة جدًا! إنها تساعد الطلاب الصغار على التعلم والنمو. تقول: "أساعد الطلاب الخجولين على أن يصبحوا شجعانًا. وعندما يحصلون على درجات جيدة، أشعر بشعور جميل. إنني أشعر بسعادة كبيرة عندما ينجحون!"

عمرو مصور للحياة البرية. لديه وظيفة شيقة! إنه يلتقط صورًا للحيوانات البرية. يقول: "أجد أكبر الأسود وأصغر الطيور. ألتقط صورًا رائعة في أماكن بعيدة. أحيانًا، أنتظر وقتًا طويلًا لأحصل على أفضل صورة!"

سلمى تعمل مع الدُمى. لديها وظيفة رائعة! إنها تستخدم الدُمى في حكي القصص. تقول: "أقده عروضا كثيرة للأطفال. أحب رؤية ابتساماتهم الكبيرة وسماع ضحكاتهم العالية. يكون الأمر ممتعًا عندما يستمتع الأطفال بالعرض!"

عادل مؤدٍ صوتي. لديه وظيفة مثيرة! إنه يؤدي أصواتًا لأفلام الرسوم المتحركة. يقول: "أستطيع أن أؤدي أصواتًا عالية وأصواتًا منخفضة، وأن أتكلم بسرعة أو ببطء. أؤدي أصواتًا صغيرة للشخصيات الصغيرة وأصواتًا مرتفعة للشخصيات الكبيرة!"

GRAMMAR STUDY



Superlative Adjectives

صيغة التفضيل

Usage الاستخدام

- Use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.
تستخدم صيغة التفضيل المطلق لبيان أعلى درجة من شيء ما أو لتمييز شيء بأنه الأفضل أو الأكبر أو الأجمل ضمن مجموعة.
- To make superlative adjectives, we usually add "est" to the end of the adjective, and we always put "the" before the superlative adjective.
لصياغة الصفات بصيغة التفضيل، نضيف عادةً "est" في نهاية الصفة، ونضع دائمًا "the" قبل الصفة في صيغة التفضيل.

Examples:

- ▶ tall → the tallest
- ▶ This tree is the tallest tree in the park.

- If an adjective ends in a vowel followed by a consonant, double the consonant before adding "est" to the end:.
إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن (consonant) وقبله حرف متحرك (vowel) نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة -est.

Examples:

- ▶ big → the biggest
- ▶ I find the biggest lions.

- When an adjective ends in "e", we add "st" to the end.
عندما تنتهي الصفة بالحرف "e"، نضيف فقط "st" في النهاية.

Examples:

▶ nice → the nicest

▶ Mona is the nicest friend I have.

- If an adjective ends in a consonant and "y", we change the "y" to "i" and add "est" to the end.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن متبوعًا بـ "y"، فإننا نغيّر "y" إلى "i" ثم نضيف "est" في النهاية.

Examples:

▶ happy → the happiest

▶ Nora is the happiest girl in the class.

Exercises on Lesson 2

- 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

photo - photographer - dangerous - animals

This is my uncle, Ali. He takes pictures of wild ① in nature. He is a very smart wildlife ② Everyone says that Ali's job is really ③ but he finds it quite interesting. Sometimes, he waits for a very long time to get the best ④ He likes wild animals and being in nature.

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Students feel nice when they well in their exams.

- a) do b) make c) have d) show

2. It takes to become a skilled professional mentor.

- a) a long time b) loud laughs c) do well d) take pictures

Unit 5

3. It's a firefighter's job to fires quickly and safely.
 a) stop b) wear c) talk about d) design
4. She is the nurse in the hospital.
 a) kind b) kinder c) kindest d) more kind
5. Stopping this fire was the challenge.
 a) big b) bigger c) bigger d) biggest
6. This engineer is the person in our team.
 a) smart b) smartest c) smarter d) most smart
7. My teacher is the person I know.
 a) busy b) more busy c) busier d) busiest

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mona is the (tall) girl in our class.
2. This dress is (than) nicest in the shop.
3. I think elephants are (heavy) animals.
4. What is the (big) animal at the zoo?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Not all people do the same jobs. A policeman does something, and a teacher does another thing. A secretary uses a computer, but a salesgirl uses her head. A housewife **looks after** her children, cooks food, and cleans the flat. Other people work in an office, in a shop, on a farm, or on a building site. A doctor works in a hospital day and night and is always ready to help any sick person.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "**looks after**" means
 a) looks for b) looks up c) cares out d) cares for

2. A works at home.

- a) policeman b) housewife c) teacher d) builder

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who uses a computer?

.....

4. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

1. what kind of uniform does a firefighter wear

.....

2. a police officer wears a white uniform

.....

6 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite job"

▶ What is the job?

▶ Where do you work?

▶ Why do you like it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



carpenter

نجار



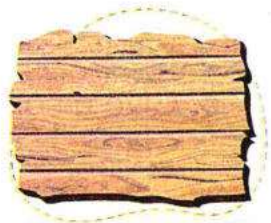
hammer (n.)

شاكوش



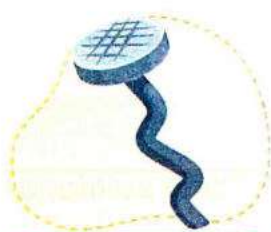
nail

مسمار



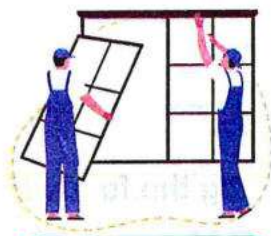
board

لوح خشبي



crooked

مائل - معوج



fit (adj.)

مناسب - ملائم



furniture

أثاث



gift

هدية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

building

مبنى / بناء

request

يطلب / طلب

carelessly

بإهمال

shock (n.)

صدمة

kindly

بلطف

village

قرية

regret (n.)

ندم

wooden

خشبي

Adjectives

صفات

beautiful

جميل - جميلة

careful

حريص

busy

مشغول

careless

مهمل

Adjectives

صفات

final	نهائي	tired	مُتعب
quiet	هادئ	usual	معتاد
skilled	ماهر	wonderful	رائع

Important Sentences & Expressions جملة وتعبيرات هامة

after a lifetime of	بعد فترة من ...	From that day on,	منذ ذلك اليوم،
hard work	عمل جاد	no matter how	بغض النظر عن مدى
grow tired	يصبح متعباً	for many years	لعدة سنوات
in shock	في صدمة	come with a request	يأتي بطلب
come to	يصل لـ	promise to	يعد بأن
turned red	تحول للون الأحمر	give his best	يبذل قصارى جهده

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

admire يُعْجَب بـ - يُقَدِّر	admired	repair يصلح	repaired
agree يوافق	agreed	rest يستريح	rested
decide يقرر	decided	retire يتقاعد	retired
hammer يطرق - يدق	hammered	smile يبتسم	smiled
promise يعد	promised	travel يسافر	traveled

Unit 5

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
build	يبني	built		give	يعطي	gave	
fit	يناسب - يلائم	fit					

Listen and read



The Last House

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built **strong houses** and beautiful **furniture**. People admired his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his **wooden chairs** and **tables**.



After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired. He decided it was time to rest and stop building. But before he could retire, the village king came to him with a request.

"Please **build** one last house," the king said. "It will be your final **gift** to the village."

Sami agreed, but his heart was not in it. He used **weak wood**. He didn't check the **windows** or the **doors**. The windows didn't fit. The doors were crooked. The house looked nothing like his usual careful work.

When the house was finished, Sami gave the keys to the king. The king smiled kindly and said, "This house is for you, Sami. It's a gift for all your wonderful work over the years."

Sami stood in shock. His own poor work was now his home. His face turned red with **regret**. He had built this house **carelessly**—and now he had to live in it.

From that day on, Sami promised to always give his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly **repaired** the house, **board** by board, and made it strong and beautiful again.

And with each **nail** he **hammered**, Sami remembered who he truly was.

المنزل الأخير

كان سامي نجارًا ماهرًا يعيش في قرية هادئة. لسنوات عديدة، بنى منازل قوية وأثناًا جميلًا. أعجب الناس بعمله، وسافر البعض من أماكن بعيدة فقط لرؤية كراسيه وطاولاته الخشبية. بعد حياة مليئة بالعمل الشاق، شعر سامي بالتعب. وقرر أن الوقت قد حان للراحة والتوقف عن البناء. ولكن قبل أن يتمكن من التقاعد، جاءه ملك القرية يطلب.

قال الملك: "من فضلك، ابنِ منزلًا أخيرًا. ستكون هذه هديتك الأخيرة للقرية."

وافق سامي، لكن قلبه لم يكن متحمسًا. استخدم سامي خشبًا ضعيفًا. ولم يتفقد النوافذ أو الأبواب. النوافذ لم تكن ملائمة. والأبواب كانت مائلة. لم يكن المنزل يشبه عمله الدقيق المعتاد على الإطلاق.

عندما انتهى المنزل، أعطى سامي المفاتيح للملك. ابتسم الملك بلطف وقال: "هذا المنزل لك يا سامي. إنه هدية لعملك الرائع على مر السنين."

وقف سامي في صدمة. عمله السيئ أصبح الآن منزله. احمر وجه سامي من الندم. لقد بنى هذا المنزل بإهمال - والآن عليه أن يعيش فيه.

منذ ذلك اليوم، وعد سامي بأن يقدم دائمًا أفضل ما لديه، مهما شعر بالتعب أو الانشغال. وأصلح المنزل ببطء، لوحًا بلوح، وجعله قويًا وجميلًا مرة أخرى. ومع كل مسمار كان يدقه، تذكر سامي من هو حقًا.

Pronunciation



- When a silent "e" comes at the end of a word after one consonant, it makes the vowel before it a long vowel.

● عندما يأتي حرف "e" الصامت في نهاية الكلمة بعد حرف ساكن واحد، فإنه يجعل الحرف المتحرك الذي يسبقه ينطق بصوته الممدود (صوت طويل).

Examples:



cube



stone



face



flute



slide



rope



nine



gate

Practice Pronunciation

Complete with long vowel words. Then repeat the sentences:

slide - rope - stone - flute - nine

1. We used a long to pull the bucket from the well.
2. The child went down the at the playground.
3. I have a small, smooth I found on the beach.
4. The number of students in the class is
5. She blew into the and made a beautiful sound.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete with the words in the box:



Wooden - promise - skilled - fits

1. It is the right size I'm looking for; it really me.
2. means made of wood.
3. Omar is He's very good at doing things.
4. If you to do something, it means that you will definitely do it.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A skilled can make beautiful wooden furniture.
a) doctor b) teacher c) carpenter d) farmer
2. My father bought new for the living room, including wooden chairs.
a) regret b) request c) furniture d) building
3. She received a lovely from her friends on her birthday.
a) work b) regret c) request d) gift
4. The carpenter used a special type of to build the strong table.
a) food b) board c) wood d) flowers
5. He felt a deep after saying something bad.
a) gift b) work c) regret d) request
6. If you do something, you might make mistakes.
a) skilled b) strong c) carelessly d) carefully

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Mr. Omar is a skilled carpenter in our village. He can fix anything! With his trusty hammer and strong nails, he turns wooden boards into beautiful furniture. His tables and chairs are always strong and never crooked. People from all over the village ask him for help. Mr. Omar loves his job and is very proud of his wonderful work!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mr. Omar works as a
 a) doctor b) teacher c) carpenter d) farmer
2. Mr. Omar turns wood into
 a) toys b) houses c) furniture d) clothes

B Answer the following questions:

3. What does Mr. Omar use to turn boards into furniture?
 ►
4. Why do people from the village ask Mr. Omar for help?
 ►

4 Punctuate the following:

1. what color is a typical fire truck
 ►
2. doctors check health in big hospitals
 ►

5 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"The farmer"

► **grows - feed - animals**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



fire station

محطة إطفاء



hero

بطل



water hoses

خرطوم مياه



equipment

معدات



alarm

إنذار



ladders

سلالم



protective uniform

زيت واقية



oxygen tank

أسطوانة أكسجين

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

art	فن	origami	فن طي الورق (الأوريغامي)
details	تفاصيل		
folded paper	طي الورق	saving lives	إنقاذ الحيوانات
tools	أدوات	scissors	مقص
markers	أقلام تحديد	shapes	أشكال
non-fiction	واقعي - غير خيالي	tools	أدوات
objects	أشياء		

Unit 5

Adjectives

صفات

bright	لامع - ساطع	local	محلي
clean	نظيف	proud	فخور
colored	ملون	ready	مستعد
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
heavy	ثقيل	special	مميز
Japanese	ياباني	thick	سميك

Important Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات هامة

fight fires	يكافح (يُطفئ) الحرائق	in danger	في خطر
save people	ينقذ الناس	like most	أكثر ما يحب
proud to be	فخور لكونه	is made by	يُصنع عن طريق
make sure	يتأكد	in the right place	في المكان الصحيح

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
create	يصنع	created		pick	يلتقط	picked	
follow	يتابع	followed		protect	يحمي	protected	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
fight	يقاتل	fought		put on	يرتدي	put on	
make ... up	يخلق - يؤلف	made ... up		ring	يرن	rang	

Read and learn

What makes someone a hero?



My neighbor, Omar, is a **firefighter** at our local **fire station**. He wears a thick **protective uniform** with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him safe.

Every day at the station, he checks his **equipment** and keeps the **big red fire truck** ready. He also makes sure everything is **clean** and in the **right place**. When the **alarm** rings, he quickly puts on his **equipment** and rides the truck with his team to help people in **danger**. He uses special **tools** like water hoses, ladders, and **oxygen tanks** to fight fires and save people.

Omar says the part he likes most about his job is **saving lives** and protecting our community. The work is **dangerous**, but he's proud to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.

ما الذي يجعل شخصاً بطلاً؟

يعمل جاري عمر كرجل إطفاء في محطة الإطفاء المحلية لدينا. إنه يرتدي زيًا واقياً سميكًا بخطوط صفراء زاهية وخوذة ثقيلة للحفاظ على سلامته.

كل يوم في المحطة، يتفقد معداته ويُبقي شاحنة الإطفاء الحمراء الكبيرة جاهزة. كما يتأكد من أن كل شيء نظيف وفي مكانه الصحيح. عندما يرن جرس الإنذار، يرتدي معداته بسرعة ويركب الشاحنة مع فريقه لمساعدة الناس الذين في خطر. إنه يستخدم أدوات خاصة مثل خراطيم المياه والسلالم وأسطوانات الأكسجين لمكافحة الحرائق وإنقاذ الناس.

يقول عمر إن أكثر جزء يحبه في وظيفته هو إنقاذ الأرواح وحماية مجتمعنا. إن هذا العمل خطير، لكنه فخور بكونه رجل إطفاء لأنه يحب مساعدة الآخرين وإحداث فرق.

Writing a non-fiction text

كتابة نص غير خيالي

Non-Fiction writing should include:

يجب أن تتضمن الكتابة غير الخيالية ما يلي:

① An introductory sentence جملة تمهيدية

▶ Ex: My father is a teacher.

أبي معلم.

② Details that are all true تفاصيل كلها حقيقية

▶ Ex: He teaches English at a primary school.

إنه يدرس اللغة الإنجليزية في مدرسة ابتدائية.

③ Adjectives صفات

▶ Ex: He is kind and funny.

إنه لطيف ومضحك.

④ A closing sentence جملة ختامية

▶ His job is difficult, but he's proud to be a teacher.

وظيفته صعبة، لكنه فخور بكونه معلمًا.

My father is a teacher.

He teaches English at a primary school.

He is kind and funny.

His job is difficult, but he's proud to be a teacher.



Project

Origami Art

فن الأوريغامي

Origami is an art form that is made by folding paper to make shapes, animals, or objects.

الأوريغامي هو شكل فني يُصنع عن طريق طي الورق لصنع أشكال أو حيوانات أو أشياء.

Origami is the Japanese art of paper folding. We can create amazing things with just paper!

الأوريغامي هو فن طي الورق الياباني. يمكننا صنع أشياء مذهلة بالورق فقط!

Ex: Origami Art



Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

oxygen tanks - ladders - tools - dangerous

When the alarm rings, a firefighter team quickly gets ready. Their job is often very ①, but they work to save lives and stop fires. They use various ② like water hoses to spray water. For high places, they use ③ If someone needs to breathe in smoke, they might carry ④ for them.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A firefighter works at the fire
a) station b) team c) alarm d) ladder
2. Firefighters wear a special to stay safe.
a) tool b) alarm c) uniform d) hose
3. Before going to a fire, firefighters check all their
a) ladders b) equipment c) stripes d) helmets
4. When the alarm rings, the firefighter team gets ready to people's lives.
a) play b) save c) check d) grow
5. It is a dangerous job, but firefighters save
a) money b) time c) lives d) food
6. They use special to fight fires.
a) foods b) rains c) tools d) stripes
7. Water are used to spray water on fires.
a) tanks b) ladders c) hoses d) helmets
8. Firefighters use to reach high places.
a) stripes b) ladders c) uniforms d) oxygen tanks
9. People who have trouble breathing in smoke might need
a) stripes b) helmets c) oxygen tanks d) tools

Unit 5

10. A firefighter's helmet offers a lot of for his head.
 a) danger b) protection c) equipment d) alarm

3 Read and rewrite the sentences using the correct superlative adjective between brackets:

1. I think the teacher's job is the (nice) job.



2. This is the (big) box in the room.



3. A firefighter carries the (heavy) tools.



4. Sami built the (weak) house.



4 Punctuate the following:

1. My neighbor omar is a firefighter



2. what makes someone a real-life hero



3. I don t live in Saudi arabia.



5 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Doctors"



► hospitals - help - save

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 5

Main Vocabulary

jobs	وظائف	skilled	ماهر
doctor	طبيب	carpenter	نجار
nurse	ممرضة	coat	بالطو - معطف
teacher	معلم	uniform	زيت مودد
engineer	مهندس	cap	قبعة - طاقيّة
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	helmet	خوذة
police officer	ضابط شرطة	vest	سترة
mentor	مرشد تعليمي	origami	فن طي الورق
wildlife photographer	مصور للحياة البرية	folding paper	طي الورق
puppets	دمى	art	فن
voice-over actor	مؤدي صوتي	gift	هدية

Pronunciation

When a silent «e» comes at the end of a word after one consonant, it makes the vowel before it a long vowel.

عندما يأتي حرف «e» الصامت في نهاية الكلمة بعد حرف ساكن واحد، فإنه يجعل الحرف المتحرك الذي يسبقه ينطق بصوته الممدود (صوت طويل).

Examples:



Grammar Study



Superlative adjectives

صيغة التفضيل

Use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.

تستخدم صيغة التفضيل المطلق لبيان أعلى درجة من شيء ما أو لتمييز شيء بأنه الأفضل أو الأكبر أو الأجمل ضمن مجموعة.

tall	→	the tallest
big	→	the biggest
nice	→	the nicest
happy	→	the happiest

- ▶ This tree is **the tallest** tree in the park.
- ▶ I find **the biggest** lions.
- ▶ Mona is **the nicest** friend I have.
- ▶ Nora is **the happiest** girl in the class.





Dictation:

jobs	ممرضة
doctor	مدرس
engineer	شجاع
firefighter	بعيد
police officer	متعاون
mentor	خراطيم مياه
wildlife photographer	مسمار
puppets	أنابيب أكسجين
voice-over actor	خشب
slide	بالطو
uniform	يندم
cube	قبعة
helmet	طي الورق
gate	سترة
origami	خجول
folding paper	عمل جاد
art	إنذار
stone	ماهر
important	نجار

Practice 11 on Unit 5

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. My dad's job is a/an (doctor - police officer - firefighter - engineer).
2. My dad wears (a suit - a uniform - regular clothes - glasses) for his job.
3. My sister likes to (play sports - read books - fold paper - watch TV).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

teacher - doctor - calm - job

- Layla** : Hi, Sami! What is the ① you want to be?
- Sami** : I want to be a ② I love helping sick people.
- Layla** : That's great! I want to be a ③ because I like teaching kids.
- Sami** : Cool! What skills do you need for that?
- Layla** : You must be ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Art of Origami is a Japanese paper-folding craft. You start with a square paper and use only your hands to make folds. No scissors or glue are needed! This hobby creates amazing shapes and objects like animals or flowers, improving concentration and patience.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main tool used to create origami?
▶
2. What kind of skill can origami help you improve?
▶

B Choose the correct answer:

1. "Origami" is mainly about (painting pictures - folding paper - cutting wood).
2. We don't use (paper - glue - hands) in traditional origami.
3. "Origami" can help you with (running faster - making loud noises - focusing better).

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Someone who helps sick people is a (mentor - firefighter - doctor).
2. A (wildlife photographer - police officer - doctor) helps people and keeps the city safe.
3. Sara is the (cleverer - cleverest - clever) girl in our class.
4. A (voice - over actor - mentor - doctor) uses their voice for cartoons.
5. The Nile River is the (long - longest - longer) river in the world.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. sick - people - helps - A - in - doctor - hospitals.
▶
2. a - building - engineer - designed - tall - very - The.
▶
3. mentor - a - in - school - Does - a - work?
▶ ?
4. photographer - wildlife - pictures - took - The - beautiful.
▶
5. enjoyed - playing - with - The - child - the - puppets.
▶

Practice 12 on Unit 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. My friend is a (teacher - police officer - player - leader).
2. The police officer's job is (bad - weak - important - lazy).
3. He sometimes guards a big (door - museum - office - gate).
4. He is strong and (kills - watches - plays - helps) people.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The Siwa (Bazar - Oasis - Tower - Nile) has lots of trees and water
2. A/An (officer - teacher - firefighter - engineer) designs new buildings.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

zookeeper - careful - check - designer

My name is Ali. When I grow up, I want to be a ① because I love working with animals. To do this job, I need to be ② and kind. Every day, I would ③ the animals and help them stay healthy. My friend Sara wants to be a ④ because she likes painting and drawing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Firefighters are brave individuals who protect and save people from dangerous situations, especially fires. Their job is to stop fires and ensure everyone's safety. They wear a special uniform that includes a heavy coat and a helmet to protect them from heat and falling stones. Police officers also protect people, but their main role is to maintain order and help prevent crime, often wearing a white uniform.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Firefighters protect people from (sick people - falling buildings - fires - patients).
2. Police officers wear (blue - white - green - yellow) uniform.

B Answer the following questions:

3. What special clothing does a firefighter's uniform include? ►
4. What does a police officer do exactly? ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Yusuf is the (tall) student in our class.
2. The cat is (front) the table.
3. I think elephants are (than) heaviest animals.
4. The police station is (in) the hospital and the post office.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda was upset when she received the letter. ()
2. Peggy and Maddie felt bad about their behavior. ()

B Answer the following questions:

1. How did Wanda feel when she got the letter? ►
2. What lesson did Peggy and Maddie learn? ►

7 Punctuate the following:

1. who do doctors and nurses help and care for ►

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your father's job"



► What is this job?

► What does he wear?

► What does he do exactly?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2 | On Units 4 - 5

Practice 13 based on units 4 - 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. The children visited the (museum - fire station - zoo - police station).
2. The firefighter showed them the (costumes - food - uniforms - furniture).
3. The children saw tools and learned how to (draw animals - fix cars - fight fires - take exams).
4. The boy said he wanted to be a (teacher - photographer - police officer - firefighter).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The children saw many treasures in the (mall - river - museum - post).
2. The doctor (wears - grows - puts - enjoys) a white coat at work.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Museum - guide - treasures - learn

I was very excited when our teacher told us we would visit the Egyptian
① As we entered, a friendly ② welcomed us
and led the way through the large halls. We saw golden ③
statues, and tools from thousands of years ago. The guide told us interesting
facts about the past. I love trips like this because I get to ④
something new every time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Layla wants to be a doctor. She visited a hospital with her school
and saw how doctors care for sick people. She talked to a nurse who
wore a white uniform and helped **patients** every day. Layla said,
"Helping others is a great job. I want to check people's health and
make them feel better!"

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Layla wants to be a (teacher - nurse - doctor - vet).

Review 2

2. The underlined word "patients" means (students - sick people - builders - artists).

B Answer the following questions:

3. What color was the nurse's uniform? ▶
4. Why does Layla want to become a doctor? ▶

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda's family moved to the big city. ()
2. Peggy and Maddie learned an important lesson about kindness. ()

B Answer the following questions:

1. Who read the letter from Wanda's father? ▶
2. What did Peggy and Maddie promise to do in the future? ▶

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The box is (in front) to the chair.
2. The museum is (next) of the station.
3. The nurse is the (kind) person at the hospital.
4. That was (then) happiest day of my life.

8 Punctuate the following:

1. this is a great place to visit ▶

9 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your favorite place in Egypt"

- ▶ What is the place? ▶ What do you see or do there?
▶ Why do you like it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 14 based on units 4 - 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. The students first visited the (post office - school - Pyramids - museum).
2. They took pictures and rode (buses - boats - camels - donkeys).
3. After the pyramids, they visited the (Nile River - market - hospital - tower).
4. The girl said she loved the (school - quiet museum - busy market - empty boat).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The police officers (check - protect - use - stop) people.
2. Tourists love to buy (pictures - packages - gifts - camels) from Khan Al-Khalili.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

doctor - nurse - sick - health

Last week, I went to the hospital with my cousin because he was feeling very ① A kind ② spoke to us and asked some questions. Then, a helpful ③ came and took his temperature. They worked together to check his body and make sure everything was okay. I learned that helping people and caring for their ④ is a very important job.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One weekend, Ali and his family took a long trip to Siwa Oasis, located far from the busy city. It was their first time there, and everything looked different and peaceful. They rode camels across the soft sand and explored palm trees, lakes, and old stone houses. Later, they went to a traditional market full of handmade gifts and local food. Ali bought a small **present** for his teacher because he wanted to say thank you. His mother smiled and said, "This is one of the most beautiful places I've ever seen!"

Review 2

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali and his family visited the (school - oasis - post office - supermarket).
2. The underlined word "present" means (gift - lunch - idea - camel).

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Ali and his family ride across the sand? ▶
4. Why did Ali buy a present for his teacher? ▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. A firefighter has the (hard) job.
2. This is (then) brightest uniform I have ever seen!
3. The post office is (under) the school and the hospital.
4. The students go to the museum (on) the morning.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Maddie and Peggy said sorry to Wanda. ()
2. Wanda told the girls to keep her drawings. ()

B Answer the following questions:

1. What did the girls realize about Wanda's hundred dresses? ▶
2. How did Wanda feel when she got the letter? ▶

7 Punctuate the following:

1. i want to be a police officer ▶

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"A job I like"



▶ What is the job?

▶ What does the person wear or do?

▶ Why do you like it?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Story

Fiction Reader The Hundred Dresses المائة فستان

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Talk about your favorite character in the story
- Show a project about eating well.



Writing

- Write a letter based on the story's events.

Reading

- Read and answer questions about the story.
- Elements of a story.
- Respond to critical thinking questions based on the story's events.

By: Eleanor Estes

Story Elements عناصر القصة

We have three important elements in a story:

لدينا ثلاثة عناصر مهمة في أي قصة:

- 1 **Setting:** The place and time of the story (When & Where)?
المكان والزمان: مكان و زمان حدوث القصة.
- 2 **Characters:** People or animals in a story.
الشخصيات: الناس أو الحيوانات في القصة.
- 3 **Moral:** The lesson the story teaches us.
الدرس المستفاد: الدرس الذي نتعلمه من القصة.

The Hundred Dresses - Story Elements

- 1 **Setting:** A small school.
المكان: مدرسة صغيرة.
- 2 **Characters:** Wanda - Peggy - Maddie - Miss Mason.
الشخصيات: وندا - بيغي - مادي - الأنسة ميسون.
- 3 **Moral:** We shouldn't judge others by their appearance.
الدرس المستفاد: لا ينبغي أن نحكم على الآخرين من مظهرهم.

Characters الشخصيات



Wanda

A quiet, kind girl who wore the same faded blue dress every day. She told her classmates she had a hundred dresses at home, but they were actually her beautiful dress drawings. She was misunderstood and bullied, but proved her talent by winning the drawing competition.

واندا: فتاة هادئة وطيبة كانت ترتدي نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم. أخبرت زملاءها في الصف أن لديها مائة فستان في المنزل، لكنها كانت في الحقيقة رسوماتها الجميلة لفساتين. لقد أسيء فهمها وتعرضت للتنمر، لكنها أثبتت موهبتها بفوزها بمسابقة الرسم.



Peggy

A popular girl who often bullied Wanda about her dresses. She didn't realize how hurtful she was until Wanda moved away. Afterward, she felt guilty and wanted to make things right.

بيجي: فتاة مشهورة كانت كثيرًا ما تسخر من واندنا بسبب فساتينها. لم تدرك مدى الأذى الذي سببته حتى رحلت واندنا. بعد ذلك، شعرت بالذنب وأرادت تصحيح الأمور.



Maddie

Peggy's friend who watched Wanda being bullied but stayed silent because she was afraid to lose Peggy's friendship. She later regretted not standing up for Wanda and helped write the apology letter. The experience changed her deeply.

مادي: صديقة بيجي التي شاهدت واندنا تتعرض للتنمر لكنها بقيت صامتة لأنها كانت تخشى أن تخسر صداقة بيجي. لاحقًا، ندمت على عدم الدفاع عن واندنا وساعدت في كتابة رسالة الاعتذار. لقد غيرتها هذه التجربة بشكل عميق.



Miss Mason

The teacher who organized the drawing competition. She read Wanda's father's letter to the class and helped the students reflect on their behavior.

الآنسة ميسون: المعلمة التي نظمت مسابقة الرسم. قرأت رسالة والد واندنا أمام الصف وساعدت الطلاب على التفكير في سلوكهم.

Picture Dictionary القاموس المصور



dress

فستان



closet دواليب ملابس



playground

ملعب

Unit 6



competition منافسة



drawings رسومات



medal ميدالية



sign (v.) يُوقِّع



letter خطاب - رسالة



announce (v.) يعلن



winner فائز



faded باهت

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

quiet

هادئ

annual

سنوي

wear (v.)

يرتدي

surprise

مفاجأة

despite

بالرغم من

designs

تصميمات

lined up

مرصوص - مُنَظَّم في صفوف

receive (v.)

يستقبل

popular

مشهور - محبوب

absent

غائب

move (v.)	ينتقل	behavior	سلوك - تصرف
face (v.)	يواجه	experience	تجربة
unkindness	قسوة	kindness	طيبة
terrible	فظيع	promise (v.)	يعد
realize (v.)	يدرك	bullying	تنمر
apologize (v.)	يعتذر	several	عدة
annoy (v.)	يضايق	no one	لا أحد
laugh (v.)	يضحك	notice (v.)	يلاحظ

Definitions تعريفات

faded باهت	: Light in color because it is old or used لونه فاتح لأنه قديم أو مستعمل
popular مشهور	: Known by many people معروف لدى كثير من الناس
annoying مزعج	: Making you feel unhappy or a little angry يجعلك تشعر بالحزن أو الغضب قليلاً
absent غائب	: Not in a place غير متواجد في مكان
notice يلاحظ	: To see or hear something رؤية أو سماع شيء
behavior سلوك	: The way someone acts الطريقة التي يتصرف بها شخص ما
expensive غال	: Costs a lot of money يكلف الكثير من المال
bullying تنمر	: Hurting or scaring other people إيذاء الآخرين أو إخافتهم
apologize يعتذر	: To say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong قول «أنا آسف» عند فعل شيء خاطئ

In a small school, there was a girl named Wanda. She was a quiet girl who sat in the back of the classroom. Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress every day. Despite this, Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home, all lined up in her closet.



في مدرسة صغيرة، كانت هناك فتاة تُدعى وندا. كانت وندا فتاة هادئة تجلس في آخر الصف الدراسي. وكانت ترتدي دائماً نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم. ورغم ذلك، كانت وندا تخبر الجميع أنها تملك مائة فستان جميل في المنزل، كلها مرصوفة في خزانة ملابسها.

Questions and Answers



Answer the following questions:

1. What was the name of the quiet girl in the class?

ما اسم الفتاة الهادئة في الصف؟

► Her name was Wanda.

كان اسمها وندا.

2. Where did Wanda sit in the classroom?

أين كانت تجلس وندا في الصف الدراسي؟

► She sat in the back.

كانت تجلس في الخلف.

3. What kind of dress did Wanda always wear?

ما نوع الفستان الذي كانت وندا ترتديه دائماً؟

► She wore a faded blue dress.

كانت ترتدي فستاناً أزرق باهتاً.

4. How many dresses did Wanda say she had at home?

كم عدد الفساتين التي قالت وندا إنها تملكها في المنزل؟

► She said she had a hundred dresses

قالت إنها تملك مائة فستان.

5. Where did Wanda say the dresses were kept?

أين قالت واندإا إن الفساتين موضوعة؟

▶ In her closet, all lined up.

في خزانة ملابسها، مرصوفة بشكل مرتب.

Exercises on Part 1

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda was a noisy girl. (.....)
2. She wore a different dress every day. (.....)
3. Wanda said she had a hundred dresses at home. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Wanda sat at the of the classroom.
a) front b) middle c) back d) corner
2. Wanda's dress was
a) green b) red c) blue d) yellow
3. Wanda told the class she had dresses at home.
a) twenty b) fifty c) seventy d) a hundred

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

faded - closet - hundred - blue - back

In a small school, there was a girl named Wanda. She sat in the
 ① of the classroom and always wore a ② blue
 dress. She told the class she had a ③ beautiful dresses
 in her ④

The **popular** girls at school, especially Peggy and Maddie, **annoyed** Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the playground, Peggy said, "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" The other girls laughed. Maddie didn't like how they were annoying Wanda, but she stayed quiet. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's friendship. Soon, most of the girls were annoying Wanda and laughing about her hundred dresses.



كانت الفتيات المشهورات في المدرسة، وخاصة بيجي ومادي، يضايقن واند كل صباح. في أحد الأيام، وهن في ساحة اللعب، قالت بيجي: "واندا، أخبرينا عن فساتينك المائة!" وضحكت باقي الفتيات. لم تُعجب مادي بالطريقة التي كن يضايقن بها واند، لكنها بقيت صامتة لأنها كانت خائفة من أن تخسر صداقة بيجي. وسرعان ما بدأت أغلب الفتيات في مضايقة واند والضحك على فساتينها المائة.

Questions and Answers



Answer the following questions:

1. Who annoyed Wanda every morning?

▶ Peggy and Maddie annoyed her.

من كان يضايق واند كل صباح؟

بيجي ومادي كانتا تزعجانها.

2. Where did Peggy ask Wanda about her dresses?

▶ In the playground.

أين سألت بيجي واند عن فساتينها؟

في ساحة اللعب.

3. What did Peggy say to Wanda?

▶ She said, "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!"

ماذا قالت بيجي لواندا؟

قالت: "واندا، أخبرينا عن فساتينك المائة!"

4. How did Maddie feel about annoying Wanda?

كيف شعرت مادي تجاه مضايقة وندا؟

► She didn't like it but stayed quiet.

لم يعجبها الأمر لكنها بقيت صامتة.

5. Why didn't Maddie stop Peggy?

لماذا لم تُوقف مادي بيغي؟

► Because she was afraid of losing her friendship.

لأنها كانت خائفة من أن تخسر صداقتها.

Exercises on Part

2

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Peggy and Maddie were kind to Wanda. (.....)
2. Wanda was laughed at by many girls. (.....)
3. Maddie spoke up to protect Wanda. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda in the
a) classroom b) hallway c) playground d) garden
2. Maddie stayed when Peggy annoyed Wanda.
a) loud b) quiet c) angry d) cheerful
3. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's
a) books b) toys c) clothes d) friendship

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

laughed - playground - friendship - annoying - quiet

The popular girls at school, especially Peggy and Maddie, were ① Wanda. One day in the ②, Peggy annoyed her, and the other girls ③ Maddie didn't like it but stayed ④ because she was afraid of losing Peggy's ⑤

One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, **announced** that it was time for the annual drawing competition. Miss Mason said, "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." When it was time to announce the winners, to everyone's surprise, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda drew and signed all the drawings. She won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal.



في أحد الأيام، أعلنت المعلمة الأنسة ميسون أن وقت مسابقة الرسم السنوية قد حان. قالت: "سأختار فائزًا من الأولاد وفائزة من البنات." وعندما حان وقت إعلان الفائزين، تفاجأ الجميع بأن الجدران كلها مغطاة بمائة رسمة جميلة لفساتين بألوان وتصاميم مختلفة. كانت واندرا هي من رسمت جميع هذه الرسومات ووقعت عليها. فازت واندرا بالمسابقة، لكنها لم تكن موجودة لتستلم ميدالياتها.

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Who announced the drawing competition?

من أعلن عن مسابقة الرسم؟

▶ Miss Mason announced it.

أعلنتها الأستاذة ميسون.

2. What did Miss Mason say about the winners?

ماذا قالت الأستاذة ميسون عن الفائزين؟

▶ She said she would choose one boy and one girl.

قالت إنها ستختار ولدًا واحدًا وبناتًا واحدة.

3. How many dress drawings were on the wall?

كم عدد رسومات الفساتين التي كانت على الحائط؟

▶ There were one hundred drawings.

كان هناك مائة رسمة.

4. Who drew and signed all the dress drawings?

من رسم ووقع كل صور الفساتين؟

► Wanda did.

واندا هي من فعلت ذلك.

5. Was Wanda there to receive the medal?

هل كانت واندنا موجودة لتستلم الميدالية؟

► No, she wasn't.

لا لم تكن موجودة.

Exercises on Part

3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Miss Mason was the math teacher. (.....)
2. The drawing competition had one boy and one girl winner. (.....)
3. Wanda was present at the prize ceremony. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Miss Mason was the
a) nurse b) teacher c) principal d) student
2. The competition was for
a) reading b) spelling c) drawing d) singing
3. Wanda drew drawings.
a) ten b) twenty c) fifty d) one hundred
4. wasn't there to receive her prize.
a) Wanda b) Miss Mason c) Maddie d) Peggy

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

medal - surprise - drawings - annual - colors

Miss Mason announced the ① drawing competition. On the day of the results, everyone was full of ② when they saw one hundred beautiful ③ of dresses of all colors and designs covering the walls. Wanda won, but she wasn't there to get her ④

Wanda was **absent** for several days, but no one **noticed**. Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad, saying that Wanda's family moved to the big city, where they wouldn't face unkindness.



Peggy and Maddie felt terrible. They realized that when Wanda talked about her hundred dresses, she meant those drawings, her dreams on paper. Maddie said to Peggy, "We need to write to Wanda and **apologize**." They wrote her a letter, saying, "Wanda, your drawings are beautiful and amazing. It's very sad that you aren't here to receive your medal. We are sorry for our **behavior** and hope that you're happy at your new school."

تغيبت واند لعدة أيام، لكن لم يلاحظ أحد. قرأت الأنسة ميسون رسالة من والد واند، يقول فيها إن عائلتهم انتقلت إلى المدينة الكبيرة، حيث لن يواجهوا قسوة. شعرت بيجي ومادي بشعور سيئ جدًا. وأدركنا أن واند عندما كانت تتحدث عن فساتينها المائة كانت تقصد هذه الرسومات، أحلامها التي على ورق. قالت مادي لبيجي: "يجب أن نكتب إلى واند ونعتذر." فكتبنا لها رسالة يقولون فيها: "واند، رسوماتك جميلة ومدهشة. من المحزن جدًا أنك لست هنا لتستلمي ميداليته. نحن آسفان على تصرفاتنا ونأمل أن تكوني سعيدة في مدرستك الجديدة."

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Who read the letter from Wanda's father?

من قرأ الرسالة التي من والد واند؟

▶ Miss Mason read the letter.

الآنسة ميسون هي من هي من قرأت الرسالة.

2. Why did Wanda's family move to the city?

لماذا انتقلت عائلة واند إلى المدينة؟

▶ So they wouldn't face unkindness.

لكي لا يواجهوا قسوة.

3. How did Peggy and Maddie feel after hearing what was in the letter?

كيف شعرت بيجي ومادي بعد سماع ما كان في الرسالة؟

▶ They felt terrible.

شعرتا بشعور سيئ جدًا.

4. What did the two girls realize about Wanda's hundred dresses?

ماذا أدركت الفتاتان عن المائة فستان الخاصة بواندا؟

► They realized they were her drawings and dreams.

أدركتا أنها كانت رسوماتها وأحلامها.

5. What did the two girls write in the letter to Wanda?

ماذا كتبت الفتاتان في الرسالة إلى وانا؟

► They apologized, praised her drawings, and wished her happiness in her new school.

اعتذرتا، وأشادتا برسوماتها، وتمنتا لها السعادة في مدرستها الجديدة.

Exercises on Part 4

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda's absence was quickly noticed by everyone. (.....)

2. Wanda's family moved to the big city. (.....)

3. Maddie and Peggy apologized to Wanda. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Wanda's family moved to the

a) mountains b) countryside c) big city d) small town

2. Miss Mason read a from Wanda's dad.

a) message b) poem c) letter d) story

3. Maddie and Peggy felt about their actions.

a) proud b) terrible c) happy d) excited

4. The girls realized the hundred dresses were really Wanda's

a) toys b) drawings c) clothes d) books

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

dreams - letter - apologize - unkindness - medal

Miss Mason read a ① from Wanda's dad. Wanda's family had moved to avoid ② Peggy and Maddie felt sorry when they realized Wanda's drawings were her ③ They decided to ④ in a letter and told her it was sad she wasn't there to receive her ⑤

Wanda received the letter at her new school. She was happy when she learned that the letter was from Maddie and Peggy. Then, Wanda wrote back to them, saying, "Thank you for your letter. I'm happy at my new school, and I want you to keep my drawings."



This experience changed Peggy and Maddie forever. They learned that kindness matters more than expensive clothes. They promised to always speak up if there was **bullying**.

وصلت الرسالة إلى وندا في مدرستها الجديدة. لقد شعرت بالسعادة عندما عرفت أن الرسالة من مادي وبيجي. ثم كتبت لهما ردًا قالت فيه: "شكرًا على رسالتكما. أنا سعيدة في مدرستي الجديدة، وأريدكما أن تحتفظا برسوماتي".
لقد غيّرت هذه التجربة حياة بيجي ومادي إلى الأبد. فقد تعلّمتا أن اللطف أهم من الملابس الغالية، ووعدتا أن تتكلما دائمًا عندما يحدث تنمر.

Questions and Answers



Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Wanda receive the letter from Peggy and Maddie?

أين استلمت وندا الرسالة من بيجي ومادي؟

► At her new school.

في مدرستها الجديدة.

2. How did Wanda feel when she read the letter?

كيف شعرت وندا عندما قرأت الرسالة؟

► She was happy.

كانت سعيدة.

3. What did Wanda ask the two girls to do with her drawings?

ماذا طلبت وندا من الفتيات أن تفعلنا برسوماتها؟

► She told them to keep them.

قالت لهن أن يحتفظن بها.

4. What lesson did Peggy and Maddie learn?

ما الدرس الذي تعلمته بيجي ومادي؟

► They learned that kindness is more important than expensive clothes.
تعلمتا أن اللطف أهم من الملابس الغالية.

5. What did they promise to do in the future?

بماذا وعدتا أن تفعلوا المستقبل؟

► To always speak up if there was bullying.

أن يتكلما دائمًا إذا كان هناك تنمر.

Exercises on Part 5

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda was upset when she read the letter. (.....)
2. Wanda told the girls to keep her drawings. (.....)
3. Peggy and Maddie learned an important lesson about kindness. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Wanda received the letter at her
a) old house b) new school c) art class d) birthday party
2. Wanda was to read the letter.
a) angry b) surprised c) happy d) bored
3. Wanda told the girls to her drawings.
a) return b) throw away c) forget d) keep
4. Peggy and Maddie promised to always
a) draw better pictures b) write more letters
c) speak up if there was bullying d) wear nicer clothes

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

kindness - drawings - replied - bullying - happy

Wanda ① to the girls' letter and said she was ②
at her new school. She also told them to keep her ③ Peggy
and Maddie promised to always speak up if there was ④ and
never forget the value of ⑤

General Questions

Questions with their model answers

1 Look and write the names under the pictures:

Wanda - Peggy - Maddie - Miss Mason



2 Look and Put in order:



3 Read and write (True) or (False):

1. Wanda didn't sit at the back of the classroom. (.....)
2. She always wore the same faded red dress to school. (.....)
3. Wanda said she had a hundred dresses kept at home. (.....)

4. Peggy and Maddie didn't treat Wanda nicely. (.....)
5. Maddie stayed silent even though she didn't enjoy bullying Wanda. (.....)
6. Maddie defended Wanda when she was bullied. (.....)
7. A drawing contest was announced at school. (.....)
8. Wanda participated in the competition with her drawings. (.....)
9. Wanda's drawings weren't chosen as the best in the competition. (.....)
10. Wanda was present during the prize distribution. (.....)
11. Miss Mason shared a letter written by Wanda's dad. (.....)
12. Wanda's family moved away from the town. (.....)
13. Maddie and Peggy regretted how they treated Wanda. (.....)
14. Wanda's dresses existed only in the form of toys. (.....)
15. The two girls decided to write to Wanda. (.....)
16. Wanda replied kindly to their letter. (.....)
17. Wanda was angry when she read their letter and told them to leave her alone. (.....)
18. Wanda's dresses were drawings, not real dresses. (.....)
19. Maddie and Peggy promised to speak up when someone is bullied. (.....)

4 Read and complete the sentences using the words in the box:

quiet - drawings - apologize - dresses - school - bullying - medal

1. Wanda was a girl who sat in the back of the classroom.
2. She told her classmates she had a hundred beautiful at home.
3. The girls laughed at her every day at the
4. Maddie and Peggy decided to write a letter to to Wanda.
5. The walls were covered with a hundred beautiful of dresses.
6. Wanda won the competition but wasn't there to get her

Unit 6

7. Peggy and Maddie promised to always speak up against

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'

1. Peggy
2. Wanda
3. Wanda's father
4. Maddie and Peggy

'B'

- a) realized their mistake at the end.
- b) was bullying Wanda every day.
- c) was happy at her new school.
- d) sent a letter to the school teacher.

6 Answer the following questions:

1. What did Wanda say she had at home?
▶
2. How did the popular girls treat Wanda?
▶
3. Why didn't Maddie stop them from annoying Wanda?
▶
4. What did Miss Mason announce one day?
▶
5. What surprised everyone during the drawing competition?
▶
6. Why wasn't Wanda at school to receive her prize?
▶
7. What did the letter from Wanda's father say?
▶
8. How did Peggy and Maddie feel after Wanda moved away?
▶
9. What promise did Peggy and Maddie make at the end?
▶
10. What color was the dress that Wanda wore every day?
▶

The Story Answers

Exercises on Part 1

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) F 3) T

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (b) back 2) (c) blue 3) (d) a hundred

3 Choose the correct answer with the words in the box:

- 1) back 2) faded 3) a hundred 4) closest

Exercises on Part 2

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T 3) F

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (c) playground 2) (b) quiet 3) (d) friendship

3 Choose the correct answer with the words in the box:

- 1) annoying 2) playground 3) laughed
4) quiet 5) friendship

Exercises on Part 3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T 3) F

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (b) teacher 2) (c) drawing
3) (d) one hundred 4) (a) Wanda

Unit 6

3 Choose the correct answer with the words in the box:

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1) annual | 2) surprise |
| 3) drawings | 4) medal |

Exercises on Part 4

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1) F | 2) T | 3) T |
|------|------|------|

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1) (c) big city | 2) (c) letter |
| 3) (b) terrible | 4) (b) drawings |

3 Choose the correct answer with the words in the box:

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1) letter | 2) unkindness | 3) dreams |
| 4) apologize | 3) medal | |

Exercises on Part 5

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1) F | 2) T | 3) T |
|------|------|------|

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) (b) new school | 2) (c) happy |
| 3) (d) keep | 4) (c) speak up if there was bullying |

3 Choose the correct answer with the words in the box:

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1) replied | 2) happy | 3) drawings |
| 4) bullying | 5) kindness | |

General questions

1 Look and write the names under the pictures:

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|---------------|----------|
| 1) Maddie | 2) Peggy | 3) Miss Mason | 4) Wanda |
|-----------|----------|---------------|----------|

2 Look and Put in order:

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1) 4 | 2) 3 | 3) 5 | 4) 1 | 5) 2 |
|------|------|------|------|------|

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1) F | 2) F | 3) T | 4) T |
| 5) T | 6) F | 7) T | 8) T |
| 9) F | 10) F | 11) T | 12) T |
| 13) T | 14) F | 15) T | 16) T |
| 17) F | 18) T | 19) T | |

4 Choose the correct answer with the words in the box:

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1) quiet | 2) dresses | 3) school | 4) apologize |
| 5) drawings | 6) medal | 7) bullying | |

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

- (1-b) Peggy was bullying Wanda every day.
 (2-c) Wanda was happy at her new school.
 (3-d) Wanda's father sent a letter to the school teacher.
 (4-a) Maddie and Peggy realized their mistake at the end.

6 Answer the following questions:

- 1) She said she had a hundred dresses.
- 2) They annoyed her.
- 3) Because she was afraid of losing her friendship.
- 4) She announced the annual drawing competition.
- 5) The walls were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses of all colors and designs.
- 6) Because her family moved to the big city.
- 7) Wanda's family moved to the big city, where they wouldn't face unkindness.
- 8) They felt terrible.
- 9) To always speak up if there was bullying.
- 10) Blue.

Part 4

Listening Scripts



Practice 1 on Unit 1

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Every day, I follow the same routine. First, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Practice 2 on Unit 1

Goha was hungry. He smelled soup from a restaurant. The greedy owner asked for money for the smell, but Goha offered the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and shared his meal.

Practice 3 on Unit 2

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Adam helps his community by cleaning streets and planting trees in the park. He also feeds dogs and cats, while his sister volunteers and helps neighbors. Amira collects old clothes for people who need them. They agree that when everyone helps, it makes their community great.

Practice 4 on Unit 2

Our community has many problems. One big problem is traffic, especially near schools. Another problem is trash on the streets. Ali thinks we can take the school bus to reduce cars. Mona says new bins have helped make their street very clean now.

Practice 5 on Unit 3

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Nadia's dad works as a forest guide and shows animals to visitors. At the park, people can see elephants, monkeys, lions, and giraffes.

Lions often hunt at night, and giraffes eat leaves from tall trees. Omar learns about animals from a TV program, and he wants to visit the forest park to see the animals up close.

Practice 6 on Unit 3

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often check their health.

Revision 7 on Units 1-2-3

Camels live in the desert. They have long legs. Camels can drink a lot of water at once. Their thick fur protects them from the hot sun during the day and keeps them warm at night. People use camels for traveling across the desert.

Revision 8 on Units 1-2-3

A healthy day starts with good choices! Eat a healthy breakfast for energy. Drink water and choose healthy snacks. Play outside and move your body. Before bed, get plenty of sleep. Healthy choices make your body and mind strong and happy every day!

Practice 9 on Unit 4

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Teachers are amazing guides who help kids learn new things every day! They teach us and make learning fun with games and activities. Teachers also help children be kind and work together. They really shape our future!

Listening Scripts



Practice 10 on Unit 4

My town is called Green Valley. On our main street, there are lots of shops! My mom always goes to the bakery to buy fresh bread for breakfast. I love to visit the small toy shop next door; they have the best toy cars! Our town also has a beautiful park with swings and slides. It's a great place to live!



Practice 11 on Unit 5

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

"My dad is a firefighter. He wears a uniform and a helmet. It's an important job! My sister loves folding paper to make origami art. It's fun for her."



Practice 12 on Unit 5

"My friend is a police officer. He wears a white uniform. His job is very important. Sometimes, he guards a big museum. He is strong and helps people."



Revision 13 on Units 4 - 5

The children visited the fire station yesterday. A firefighter welcomed them and showed them the special uniforms. Then, they saw the tools and learned how the team fights fires and saves lives. After that, they tried on the helmet and took pictures. "I want to be a brave firefighter!" said one boy.



Revision 14 on Units 4 - 5

The tour guide welcomed the students to Cairo. First, they visited the Pyramids and took many pictures. Then they rode camels and learned about ancient history. After that, they walked around the Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar. "I love this busy market!" said one girl..

ENGLISH

4th Prim.
2026
FIRST TERM



**Evaluations, Units Revision,
Exams, & Answers Key**

By a group of specialists



Contents

Pages

Part 1

Revision on Unit (1)

3

Revision on Unit (2)

9

Revision on Unit (3)

14

Revision on Unit (4)

20

Revision on Unit (5)

25

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

30

Part 3

Monthly Evaluations

47

Part 4

General Practice

51

Part 5

Listening Scripts

73

Part 6

Answers Key

75

Revision on Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We use our nose to things.
a) see b) hear c) smell d) taste
2. Soup is usually
a) cold b) hot c) dry d) sweet
3. The garden is full of butterflies.
a) colorful b) angry c) greedy d) hard
4. Mom makes eggs for breakfast.
a) jumping b) delicious c) sleepy d) jingling
5. The pizza smells so good! I can't wait to it.
a) see b) touch c) taste d) hear
6. I heard a dog barking outside by my
a) eyes b) ears c) tongue d) nose
7. My sofa is very soft. I love to it.
a) smell b) touch c) hear d) see
8. Can you those flowers. They look bright and beautiful.
a) taste b) see c) hear d) touch
9. You can eat an apple as a in the middle of the day.
a) hour b) snack c) restaurant d) drink
10. We go to the to buy food.
a) market b) butterfly c) answer d) garden
11. are you doing?
a) What b) Where c) When d) How much
12. Fresh vegetables are for your health.
a) bad b) lazy c) important d) fire
13. My brother his hands before dinner.
a) plays b) washes c) enjoys d) brushes
14. The girl her homework every night.
a) do b) does c) did d) doing
15. My mom puts food in my every day.
a) lunchbox b) coin c) fire d) market

Revision

16. I wake up 6 a.m. every day.
 a) in b) for c) on d) at
17. We eat eggs and toast breakfast.
 a) for b) in c) on d) by
18. My mom goes for a walk the morning.
 a) on b) for c) at d) in
19. We watch TV the evening.
 a) for b) at c) on d) in

2

Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)

1. He his teeth every day.
 a) brush b) brushes c) brushing d) brushed
2. I vegetables at lunch.
 a) eat b) eats c) eating d) ate
3. She her homework after school every day.
 a) do b) did c) doing d) does
4. We outside at break time.
 a) playing b) plays c) play d) played
5. My mom healthy soup.
 a) make b) makes c) made d) making
6. She dressed quickly.
 a) gets b) get c) to get d) getting
7. I up early on weekdays.
 a) woke b) wakes c) waking d) wake
8. The boy hello to the teacher.
 a) say b) tosay c) says d) saying

3

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My brother (wake) up early every day.
 2. She (brush) her teeth every morning.
 3. They (eats) soup for dinner.
 4. The baby (smile) at her mom.
 5. He (wash) his hands before eating.

6. We (has) break time at 11:00.
7. She always (say) nice things.
8. I (feels) strong when I eat well.
9. My mom (make) soup every evening.
10. The teacher (ask) questions in class.
11. Butterflies (flys) in the garden.
12. Ahmed (go) to the market every Saturday.
13. The boy (get) dressed for school.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

voices – touch – smoke – colorful

It was a cold day. We sat near a fire in the garden. The air was full of ❶ from the fire. I looked around and saw ❷ butterflies hanging on the trees. They were red, green, and yellow. I wanted to ❸ the butterflies, but they flew. I also heard happy ❹ , my family was laughing and talking. I felt happy and safe.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dinner – juice – yummy – eggs

Every evening, my mother prepares a healthy ❶ for the family. Yesterday, she made vegetable soup and a fresh salad. I drank orange ❷ and ate two boiled ❸ Everything tasted ❹ and made me feel full and happy.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clever – understand – classes – homework

Salma is a very ❶ girl. She always listens carefully in her ❷ and tries to answer the teacher's questions. When she gets home, she does her ❸ before dinner. She loves to play with her friends after studying. Salma can ❹ new ideas very quickly.

Revision

7

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

snack – strong – gives – healthy

When I wake up, I eat a ❶ breakfast with fruits and milk. It ❷ me the energy I need to start the day. My mom always adds snacks with vitamins or protein to my food, like fresh carrots and oranges. She says good food keeps my body ❸ Even my small ❹ at school is full of healthy things.

8

Punctuate the following:

1. one morning, I walked to school



2. what are you doing



3. she eats a healthy snack every day



4. my sister and i love colorful butterflies.



5. let's share this soup



6. the food smells delicious



7. do you like fruits



8. i enjoy the sound of birds



9. we sat outside the restaurant



10. i play with my friend ahmed at break time.



Unit 1 Test 1

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Sara has (soup and rice - eggs and brown bread - juice and fruit - pasta and sweets) for breakfast.
2. She plays in the (classroom - library - garden - canteen) at school.
3. Sara goes to a restaurant (before - during - after - never) school.
4. Her dad says, "Good food tastes better when (free - expensive - hot - shared)."

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. My dad bought fresh fruit from the (restaurant - fire - market - soup).
2. The teacher said, "(come - have - fly - sit) inside and sit down."

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

learn - classroom - laughing - clever

I love my school very much. Every morning, I walk happily into my
 ①, ready to ② new things. My best friend sits
 next to me. She is very ③ and always helps me with my
 homework. We spend break time ④ and talking together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

A hungry 10-year-old girl walked into the market with a few coins. She stopped near a restaurant and smelled the tasty food. She closed her eyes and enjoyed the smell. The owner got angry and asked her to pay. The girl was scared. A kind man saw this and smiled. He invited her to eat with him. The girl felt happy and went inside with him to eat.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The girl was in the (school - market - house - garden).
2. The girl smelled the (bad - tasty - awful - nasty) food.

Revision

B**Answer the following questions:**

3. Why did the girl stop near the restaurant? ►

4. How did the girl feel at the end of the story? ►

5**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I (says) good things to my friends.

2. He (enjoy) sweet food.

3. Suzan wakes up (on) 8 o'clock.

4. My family likes to watch TV (on) the evening.

6. The Story

A**Write T (True) or F (False):**

1. Wanda sat in the front of the classroom. ()

2. Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress. ()

B**Answer the following questions:**

3. What kind of girl was Wanda in school? ►

4. Did Wanda show her hundred dresses to her classmates? ►

7**Punctuate the following:**

o this snack is very healthy ►

8**Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:**

"Your Healthy Day"

► **Ideas to help you:**

► **What do you eat?**

► **What do you do to stay healthy?**

► **How do you feel when you eat healthy food?**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Farmers grow in South Egypt.
a) soup b) clothes c) sugar cane d) diaries
- My uncle works in a
a) bin b) factory c) galabeya d) teacher
- She at the community park every week.
a) wears b) throws c) sells d) volunteers
- I trash in the bin.
a) collect b) feed c) plant d) wear
- They traditional songs at the festival.
a) sing b) write c) read d) talk
- We old clothes for the poor.
a) visit b) collect c) grow d) celebrate
- People in Nubia their stories.
a) plant b) tell c) throw d) live
- We our community together.
a) collect b) enjoy c) wear d) grow
- My friends birds in the garden.
a) sing b) look c) wear d) watch

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

- They the market every weekend.
a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited
- My grandma proud of her culture.
a) are b) am c) is d) be
- The stalls handmade things.
a) sold b) sells c) selling d) sell
- She the park with her friends.
a) cleans b) clean c) cleaning d) to clean
- I helping my neighbors.
a) enjoys b) enjoy c) enjoyed d) enjoying

Revision

6. They together at the festival.
a) worked b) works c) working d) work
7. The teacher questions in every class.
a) ask b) asks c) asking d) to ask

3

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They (not/celebrate) the Spring Festival in winter.
2. Does he (works) in a factory near our village?
3. The children (feeds) the ducks at the park.
4. What (does) you do at the market?
5. I (not/live) near a train station.
6. The shop (sell) beautiful things.
7. They always (collects) clothes for poor people.
8. My sister (visit) the library every Monday.
9. We (celebrates) our traditions with joy.
10. My father (make) wooden decorations.
11. The people in the village (tells) old stories.
12. Omar (not/pay) for the smell.
13. I (feels) proud of my country.
14. The teacher (ask) questions every day.
15. Farmers (grows) sugar cane in El-Saied.

4

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cotton - decorations - north - factories

El-Delta is a region in the ① of Egypt. It has many ② that produce clothes and goods. People there make decorations by hand and use colorful ③ for the Spring Festival. Many farmers grow ④ and feel proud of their work.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

help – volunteers – trash – community

Mona loves her ① and always wants to make it better. Every Saturday, she ② at the local park with her neighbors. They collect ③ from the ground and plant trees. "Let's ④ each other to keep our town clean," she says.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Nubia – colorful – songs – south

People in the ① of Egypt live in small villages. In ②, men wear galabeyas and women wear ③ dresses. They sing traditional ④ at festivals and tell stories from the past.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. i help my community every week

▶

2. do you know the story of nubia?

▶

3. she wears a colorful scarf

▶

4. Let s plant trees together

▶

5. the market is very old and busy

▶

6. what a beautiful festival

▶

7. he tells stories every evening

▶

8. We don t visit the park on saturday.

▶

9. many people live in the south of egypt.

▶

Unit 2 Test 2

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Sara sings songs with her (friends - family - neighbors - teacher).
2. Sara's brother collects (coins - clothes - stories - bottles).
3. Sara and her brother help at (the restaurant - the community park - the school - the train station).
4. Sara feels (tired - proud - angry - happy).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. My dad buys milk from the (classroom - park - supermarket - factory).
2. My teacher says, "(go - fly - cook - paint) outside and close the door!"

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

proud - collect - clever - great

I live in a busy city with tall buildings and malls. Every Friday, my friends and I ① old clothes and bottles to help others. Our teacher says, "You do a ② job!" I feel ③ when we work together. My best friend is very ④ and always helps with ideas.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One day, two boys walk through the old market with their teacher. They see beautiful wooden stalls and colorful things made by hand. "These come from El-Saied," the teacher says. "Even though they are old, they are very special." The boys listen and take notes. Later, they write about their trip in their diaries. "We learn about traditions and feel proud of our culture," they write.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The boys go to the (factory - school - old market - train station).
2. The underlined word "traditions" means: (trash - ideas - special customs - animals).

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who do the boys visit the market with? ▶

4. What do they see at the market? ▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Does Heba (goes) to the community park every day?

2. He (don't) wear a galabeya.

3. My mom (make) decorations by hand.

4. We (celebrates) the Spring Festival together.

6. The Story**A** Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Peggy and Maddie were kind to Wanda. ()

2. Wanda was laughed at by many girls. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who annoyed Wanda every morning? ▶

4. Where did Peggy ask Wanda about her dresses? ▶

7 Punctuate the following:

○ this market is very old and colorful ▶

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:**"Topic: My community"****► Ideas to help you:****► What do you do to help your community?****► What does your family do?****► How do you feel about it?**

Revision on Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Arabian leopard is an species.
a) excited b) endangered c) special d) colored
2. Animals in zoos need spaces to move.
a) bigger b) loud c) smaller d) strong
3. The fox sees no coming out of the cave.
a) claws b) holes c) footprints d) nets
4. Sea animals are in danger because of
a) water b) noise c) games d) pollution
5. The giraffe is than the bear.
a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) more tall
6. The story has a: "Think before you act."
a) mistake b) moral c) lesson d) plan
7. The elephant lots of water with its trunk.
a) drinks b) jumps c) eats d) runs
8. Forest officers work to wild animals.
a) stop b) kill c) trick d) protect
9. Vets sick animals in special clinics.
a) move b) call c) treat d) play

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. My bike is than yours.
a) the fast b) faster c) fastest d) fast
2. This box is than that one.
a) big b) biggest c) more big d) bigger
3. His hands are than mine.
a) colder b) coldest c) cold d) the cold
4. Today is than yesterday.
a) more hot b) hottest c) hotter d) hot

5. This problem is harder the last one.
a) the b) hard c) then d) than
6. My brother is than me.
a) taller b) taler c) tall d) tallest
7. These shoes are cheaper the old ones.
a) thin b) tin c) cheapest d) than
8. The river is in winter.
a) deper b) depper c) deeper d) deepest
9. Your house is smaller ours.
a) thin b) than c) then d) that
10. Her story is than his.
a) shorter b) short c) shooter d) shortest
11. My backpack is than yours.
a) litter b) latest c) lighter d) light
12. That mountain is than this one.
a) highest b) high c) hiher d) higher
13. This math test is than the last one.
a) easier b) easyer c) easiest d) easy
14. My pencil is than yours.
a) longer b) longer c) longest d) long
15. That street is than our street.
a) wider b) wideer c) widest d) weedir
16. The blue chair is than the red one.
a) low b) lower c) lowest d) more low
17. Our dog is than their dog.
a) strong b) more strong c) strongest d) stronger
18. My room is bigger my sister's.
a) that b) than c) this d) these
19. The kitten is than the cat.
a) young b) more young c) youngest d) younger
20. His joke was than mine.
a) funny b) funnyer c) funnier d) funniest

Revision

3

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. A lion is (strong) than a rabbit.
2. The giraffe is (tall) than the zebra.
3. Cages in the new zoo are (clean) than in the old zoo.
4. A fox is clever (then) a bear.
5. The dugong is (small) than the shark.
6. Today is (hot) than yesterday, so the animals stay in the shade.
7. My cat is nicer (that) my dog.
8. The new animal park is (big) than the old one.
9. The elephant's ears are (large) than the monkey's.
10. Rabbits are (quiet) than parrots.

4

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cages – wild – vets – zoos

Some animals live in the ①, where they hunt and find food by themselves. Others live in ②, where people care for them in safe spaces. In zoos, animals live in ③ and need special care from ④ if they are sick.

5

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trick – footprints – cave – moral

One morning, a group of animals stands outside a dark ① They see ② on the ground but no footprints coming out. A wise fox sees the ③ and calls out to the lion inside. He does not go in because he knows it may be a trick. The ④ of this story is: "Think before you act."

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

protect – disappearing – sea grass – pollution

Many sea animals are now endangered because they lose their habitats and food. The dugong, a gentle sea animal, eats ① and lives in clean water. But ② and fishing nets hurt them. These animals are ③ forever. We must ④ them before it is too late.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. oh dear, the animals are in danger



2. we see footprints near the cave



3. that s right said the forest guide.



4. how are you feeling



5. some animals live in the wild



6. the giraffe has a spotted coat



7. do you like visiting zoos



8. The red sea dugong is gentle.



9. we protect animals around the world



Unit 3 Test 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. In a village, there lives a (giant - small - tiny - bird).
2. There are colorful birds (singing - eating - playing - starting) in the trees.
3. Every (morning - evening - midday - afternoon) on their way home from school.
4. The lovely garden always makes the children (sad - angry - happy - selfish).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The Arabian leopard is an example of an/a (active - endangered - gentle - safe) species.
2. We should protect the animals' natural (claws - habitats - caves - nests).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gifts - treasures - trip - pictures

Mustafa is on a school ① to Cairo. His class visits the Egyptian Museum and sees many ② After that, they go to the Cairo Tower and take ③ Later, they visit the busy market at Khan Al-Khalili. Mustafa buys ④ for his family. He wants to visit more places in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali visits a forest park with his class. A forest guide shows them different animals. The elephant is taller than all of them. The fox looks clever and hides near a rock. The forest guide talks about endangered animals like the Arabian leopard. He says pollution and hunting make them disappear. Ali feels sad but wants to help. He says, 'We can make a difference!'

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. The elephant looks (fast - small - short - tall).

2. The Arabian leopard is in danger because of (eating too much - living in a zoo - hunting - sleeping a lot).

B Answer the following questions:

3. What does the forest guide do? ▶

4. What is the tallest animal? ▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- Bears are stronger (the) rabbits
- The lion is (big) than the fox.
- Monkeys are (smart) than birds.
- The elephant is (heavy) than the zebra.

6. The Story

A Write T (True) or F (False):

- Miss Mason was the math teacher. ()
- The drawing competition had one boy and one girl winner. ()

B Answer the following questions:

- Who announced the drawing competition? ▶
- How many dress drawings were on the wall? ▶

7 Punctuate the following:

○ Does mona go to school by car ▶

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"How I help animals"

- Ideas to help you: ► What animals do you like?
 ► How do you protect them?
 ► What is your dream?

Revision on Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

- The shows tourists around the museum.
a) writer b) nurse c) tour guide d) teacher
- My favorite place in Egypt is the
a) hospital b) Pyramids c) letter d) post office
- I love the in the Salt Lake.
a) animals b) tissue c) colorful rocks d) paper
- People send letters and packages from the
a) restaurant b) museum c) post office d) store
- The is full of history and treasures.
a) shopping mall b) Egyptian Museum
c) Salt Lake d) school
- I rode a near the Pyramids.
a) boat b) ferry c) camel d) plane
- This is my time in Egypt.
a) long b) first c) tall d) heavy
- They took at the Cairo Tower.
a) history b) lessons c) pictures d) letters
- The helps sick people feel better.
a) store b) school c) hospital d) museum

2 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

- The camel is the two rocks.
a) in front b) between c) under d) above
- The school is to my house.
a) near b) next c) over d) at
- There are many stores the shopping mall.
a) under b) in c) on d) in front

4. The museum is the school and the library.

- a) above b) between c) next d) on

5. We stood of the Cairo Tower for a photo.

- a) above b) in front c) behind d) near

6. The post office is to the hospital.

- a) in b) between c) next d) on

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The shopping mall is (under) the post office and the library.

2. The guide stood (behind) to the group to explain the history.

3. My hotel is (on) front of the Egyptian Museum.

4. We took a photo while standing (in) to the Cairo Tower.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

natural – tourists – treasures – Museum

Egypt is a famous country with many beautiful places. Many

① visit every year. One popular place is the Egyptian

②, full of old ③ In South Sinai, you can also

explore the desert and enjoy the ④ world.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

library – school – post office – shopping mall

In my city, there are many places to visit. I go to ① to learn new things and to the ② to read books. My mom

sends letters from the ③ On the weekend, we go to the

④ where there are many stores to shop.

6**Punctuate the following:**

1. welcome to egypt.

▶

2. the shopping mall is next to the school

▶

3. We visited the monastery in south sinai.

▶

4. how are you feeling

▶

5. let's take a photo at the pyramids

▶

6. do you like this museum

▶

7. this is my first time in egypt.

▶

8. The salt lake looks amazing.

▶

9. i love history and adventure

▶

Unit 4 Test 4

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Omar visits the (hospital - post office - Egyptian Museum - library) with his class.
2. They meet a (guard - tour guide - camel - doctor) who talks about treasures and colorful rocks.
3. Omar takes pictures and buys a (gift - book - leaflet - package).
4. After that, they walk to the (Cairo Tower - Salt Lake - Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar - desert).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The (post office - Egyptian Museum - school - shopping mall) is full of treasures and statues.
2. (Listen - Sail - Welcome - Climb) to Egypt!" said the tour guide.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

leaflet - gift - museum - country

My name is Ali. I live in a beautiful ① full of history. Last weekend, we went on an adventure to Cairo. We went to the Egyptian Museum. At the ②, we saw treasures and statues. I got a birthday ③ from my dad and the guide gave me a ④ about the Pyramids.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Fatma and her class visit South Sinai on a school trip. They explore the desert and see palm trees and colorful rocks. At sunset, they reach the top of St. Catherine Mountain and take pictures. "The natural world is amazing!" says the teacher. Later, Fatma writes about the trip in her blog and calls it "A Wonderful Day in Nature."

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Fatma and her class visit (Cairo - a hospital - South Sinai - a shopping mall) on a school trip.

Revision

2. The underlined phrase "The natural world" refers to the (buildings - animals and plants - books - cars).

B Answer the following questions:

3. What do Fatma and her class see in the desert? ►
4. What does Fatma write about? ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He rides a camel (near) of the pyramids.
2. The puppet is (under) the table and the chair.
3. There is a post office (behind) to the school.
4. I put my pens (on) my pencil case.

6. The Story

A Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda's family moved to the big city. ()
2. Maddie and Peggy apologized to Wanda. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who read the letter from Wanda's father? ►
4. How did Peggy and Maddie feel after reading the letter? ►

7 Punctuate the following:

- the desert is full of colorful rocks and palm trees ►

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite place in Egypt"

► Ideas to help you:

- Where is it?
- What do you see or do there?
- Why do you like it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

- My uncle is a/an He designs buildings.
a) engineer b) nurse c) doctor d) police officer
- Voice-over actors work on
a) ladders b) cartoons c) uniforms d) boards
- Doctors wear a white at work.
a) rope b) helmet c) coat d) board
- My brother wants to become a when he grows up.
a) furniture b) building c) dentist d) rope
- A/An makes wooden tables and chairs.
a) teacher b) police officer c) carpenter d) artist
- The alarm rang! It was the sound in the fire station.
a) loudest b) slowest c) smallest d) brightest
- She works with puppets to tell
a) animals b) microphones c) computers d) stories
- Voice-over actors make different kinds of
a) clothes b) drawings c) voices d) books
- A carpenter builds strong houses and beautiful
a) furniture b) pictures c) roads d) bags

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

- The elephant is the animal in the zoo.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) most big
- My teacher is the in the school.
a) kind b) kidest c) kinder d) kindest

Revision

3. Firefighting is the job I know.
a) hard b) harder c) hardst d) hardest
4. My dad has the tools in his shop.
a) sharpest b) sharper c) sharp d) most sharp
5. That was the show ever!
a) fun b) funner c) funnest d) funniest
6. The firefighter wore the coat of all.
a) thick b) thicker c) thickest d) most thick
7. Ahmed is the student in our group.
a) smart b) smarter c) smartest d) smarting
8. This is cleanest uniform in the team.
a) than b) these c) the d) then
9. The giraffe is the animal in the zoo.
a) tallest b) taller c) tall d) most tall
10. That's the gift I've ever had.
a) nice b) nicer c) nicest d) more nice

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. This is the (tall) building in our town.
2. He is the (faster) player on the team.
3. That was the (funny) movie I've seen.
4. It was the (cold) day of the week.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

doctor – coat – designs – uniform

My uncle is an engineer. He ❶ big buildings in the city. My aunt is a ❷ She helps sick people every day. She wears a white ❸ at her job. My cousin is a firefighter. His ❹ is red and shiny. He wears a special helmet with yellow stripes when he stops fires.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. my dad and i work as firefighters.

▶

2. she wears a helmet and a vest

▶

3. the engineer designs buildings

▶

4. do you enjoy puppet shows

▶

5. we visited a fire station

▶

6. they protect people from fire

▶

7. i want to be a doctor

▶

8. he helped the sick boy

▶

Unit 5 Test 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Lina wants to become a (teacher - actor - doctor - firefighter).
2. Lina thinks helping sick people is (boring - kind - scary - lazy).
3. Her father's job is a (firefighter - doctor - carpenter - police officer).
4. Lina thinks her dad's job is the (fastest - hardest - bravest - slowest).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A firefighter wears a (vest - helmet - rope - cap) to protect his head.
2. A (teacher - carpenter - doctor - actor) helps sick people and gives medicine.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

biggest - loud - fire - tools

The alarm rang again. A ① sound came from the fire station. The firefighter team jumped into action. "Let's stop the ②!" shouted the leader. They wore helmets and carried the ③ This was the ④ fire they had seen this year. They worked hard as a team to save the people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One day, a carpenter decided to stop working. He built one last house, but did it carelessly. Later, he learned the house was a gift for him. He stood in shock and felt deep regret. From that day on, he promised to give his best. He learned that every job should be done with care, even when no one is watching.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The carpenter built a (a table - a shop - a house - a ladder).
2. The underlined word "regret" means (a happy memory - a gift - a bad feeling - a funny story).

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the carpenter feel regret? ▶

4. What did he promise at the end? ▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. This is the (big) bag in the shop.

2. That was the (fun) puppet show ever!

3. My sister is the (lazy) person I know.

4. He wears (than) thickest coat at the fire station.

6. The Story**A** Write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda was happy at her new school. ()

2. Peggy and Maddie ignored Wanda's letter. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who sent a letter to Wanda? ▶

4. What did Peggy and Maddie promise to do? ▶

7 Punctuate the following:

○ this is the best job in the world ▶

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:**"The best job for me"****► Ideas to help you:****► What job do you like best?****► Why do you like it?****► What is the best thing about it?**

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations



Week1: Based on unit1

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. We smell flowers using our
 a) ears b) tongue c) nose d) hands
2. She eats and drinks juice for breakfast.
 a) eggs b) dinner c) soup d) cola
3. You can soft and hard things with your hands.
 a) hear b) taste c) touch d) smell
4. During break time, I play with my
 a) subjects b) sports c) friends d) volunteers
5. She does her every day after school.
 a) soup b) homework c) snacks d) vitamins
6. The butterfly is flying in the between the trees and flowers.
 a) mall b) classroom c) fire d) garden
7. A healthy snack gives me and keeps me strong.
 a) color b) coins c) energy d) answers
8. When someone is, they want more than they need.
 a) greedy b) nice c) good d) beautiful
9. The teacher asks the question, and I
 a) energy b) hour c) answer d) exercise
10. My mom makes delicious vegetable in winter.
 a) sweet b) fresh c) fire d) soup

Week2: Based on unit1

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. Nada brown bread for breakfast every day.
a) eat b) to eat c) eating d) eats
2. I a healthy snack at school every day.
a) eats b) eating c) eat d) ate
3. Adam usually his teeth before going to bed.
a) brush b) brushes c) brushing d) brushed
4. My friends in the garden after school.
a) play b) playing c) plays d) to play
5. The girl always up early for school.
a) wake b) woke c) waking d) wakes
6. We vegetables and fruits every day.
a) eats b) eat c) eating d) ate
7. My sister colorful clothes on special days.
a) wear b) wears c) wearing d) to wear
8. My friend and I to the teacher and answer the question.
a) listening b) listens c) listen d) listened
9. They always lunch together at the restaurant.
a) are b) has c) having d) have
10. The food smells good, and it yummy!
a) tastes b) taste c) tasting d) tasted

Week3: Based on unit2

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. People in El-Delta grow to make beautiful clothes.
a) sugar cane b) cotton c) pottery d) ducks
2. We decorate our homes with colorful during the festival.
a) crafts b) outfits c) decorations d) designs
3. The students clean the park and help their
a) roads b) buses c) community d) market
4. My neighbors collect to recycle them.
a) bottles b) flowers c) birds d) trees
5. People plant trees to make their clean and green.
a) ducks b) community c) traffic d) outfits
6. The children feed and clean the park.
a) ducks b) clothes c) cotton d) trash
7. Many people in Nubia tell old by the river.
a) clothes b) stories c) crafts d) shirts
8. My grandpa wrote about the past in his
a) diary b) festival c) trash d) rice
9. We learn about the region's and traditions at school.
a) traffic b) clothes c) decorations d) culture
10. There are many cars on the
a) bin b) road c) garden d) routine

Week 4: Based on unit 2

1

Choose the correct answer:

1. Does Mazen his community?
 a) helps b) help c) helping d) to help
2. I old clothes every week anymore.
 a) don't collect b) doesn't collect
 c) didn't collect d) collects
3. They in tall buildings in the city.
 a) lives b) to live c) living d) live
4. My sister trash in the streets.
 a) doesn't throws b) doesn't throw
 c) throwing d) throw
5. He a diary every night before bed.
 a) writes b) write c) writing d) to write
6. you wash your hands after eating?
 a) Are b) Does c) Do d) Is
7. The students at the traffic near the school every day before crossing the street.
 a) looks b) looking c) look d) to look
8. My grandpa the Spring Festival.
 a) doesn't celebrate b) don't celebrate
 c) don't celebrated d) celebrating
9. Egyptians their culture with pride.
 a) banana b) mango c) sharing d) doesn't share
10. Hala volunteer at the park on Fridays?
 a) Is b) has c) Do d) Does
11. I the story by hand in my notebook.
 a) write b) writes c) writing d) doesn't write
12. The village colorful houses and pottery.
 a) doesn't has b) have c) has d) having

Week5: Based on unit3

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. The Arabian Leopard is an example of a/an species.

- a) active b) endangered c) gentle d) safe

2. The fisherman many fish in the sea.

- a) drinks b) runs c) climbs d) catches

3. Sea grass is an important habitat for many

- a) roads b) sea animals c) forests d) caves

4. The bear has sharp

- a) feathers b) claws c) beaks d) wings

5. The zebra has a coat.

- a) striped b) spotted c) colorful d) yellow

6. We should protect the animals' natural

- a) claws b) habitats c) visitors d) caves

7. Acts of can help animals live better lives.

- a) food b) kindness c) sleep d) wild

8. The elephant needs big to move around.

- a) food b) care c) spaces d) water

9. are marks left by feet.

- a) Fingerprints b) Photos c) Footprints d) Mistakes

10. Animals need a place to live.

- a) safe b) high c) brave d) slow

Week 6: Based on unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. This book is than the last one.
a) bigger b) big c) biggest d) more big
2. My bike is the old one.
a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) faster than
3. That rock is than this one.
a) more hard b) hard c) harder d) harded
4. The sofa is than the table.
a) heavy than b) heaviest c) heavier d) more heavier
5. Your voice is the music.
a) louder than b) more loud c) loud d) loudest
6. The sun is the moon.
a) brighter than b) bright c) brighted d) brightest
7. Your bag is mine.
a) heavier then b) heaviest c) heavier than d) heavier
8. That tree is the building.
a) higher than b) high c) high than d) highest
9. His dog is the others.
a) faster then b) fast c) fastest d) faster than
10. The soup is the tea.
a) hotter then b) hot c) hottest d) hotter than

Week 7: Based on unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. I borrowed a book from the
 a) hospital b) library c) school d) store
2. Sick people go to the
 a) hospital b) restaurant c) museum d) post office
3. You can send packages from the
 a) school b) shopping mall
 c) post office d) library
4. The museum is a great place to learn about
 a) food b) sports c) shopping d) history
5. We saw colorful rocks and palm trees in the
 a) library b) hospital c) desert d) restaurant
6. My grandfather sent me two from the post office.
 a) letters b) pencils c) books d) plates
7. People go to the hospital to better.
 a) cook b) feel c) make d) clean
8. My favorite to wear in the summer is a T-shirt and shorts.
 a) clothes b) rocks c) dates d) plants
9. You can see trees and desert plants in South Sinai.
 a) banana b) mango c) rice d) palm
10. I read a small about the desert adventure.
 a) blog b) package c) dress d) ticket

Week8: Based on unit4

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. The painting is the wall.
a) behind b) in c) on d) between
2. My shoes are to the bed.
a) under b) next c) between d) in
3. The dog is sitting the sofa and the table.
a) under b) between c) behind d) next
4. The TV is of the cupboard.
a) next b) between c) in front d) under
5. The bag is the chair.
a) in front b) in c) on d) between
6. The boy is hiding the curtain.
a) in front b) next c) behind d) between
7. The vase is the table.
a) on b) between c) in d) next
8. The cat is sleeping the sofa and the lamp.
a) between b) on c) under d) behind
9. The chair is to the desk.
a) in front of b) between c) next d) on
10. The plant is the window.
a) in front b) under c) between d) next

Week9: Based on unit5

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. A wears a white coat and helps sick people.
a) firefighter b) doctor c) actor d) builder
2. Firefighters wear a on their heads for safety.
a) helmet b) hat c) hood d) cap
3. My favorite is kind and always helps me learn.
a) engineer b) mentor c) singer d) pilot
4. Firefighters use to reach high places during fires.
a) markers b) ladders c) windows d) tubes
5. A carpenter uses wood to make
a) clothes b) furniture c) food d) medicine
6. We use to make origami animals and shapes.
a) scissors b) markers c) folding paper d) rulers
7. A helps people understand cartoons with sound.
a) voice-over actor b) mentor
c) pilot d) firefighter
8. She enjoyed the show with and funny voices.
a) tools b) puppets c) ladders d) letters
9. The went off when the fire started.
a) phone b) rope c) alarm d) door
10. He is a worker and gives his best every day.
a) weak b) noisy c) skilled d) shy

Week 10: Based on unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. This is the room in the house.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) bigest
2. This road is the in our city.
a) long b) longer c) longest d) most long
3. The giraffe is tallest animal.
a) their b) then c) than d) the
4. The cheetah is the animal on land.
a) fast b) the faster c) the fastest d) fastest
5. He is the boy in our class.
a) strongest b) stronger c) strong d) more strong
6. That was the joke today!
a) the funny b) funnier c) funniest d) funnyest
7. It was the day of the year.
a) cold b) coldest c) colder d) more cold
8. This lake is the place to swim in.
a) deep b) deeper c) deepest d) more deep
9. He scored the points in the game.
a) highest b) higher c) high d) most high
10. That was the climb I've ever done.
a) longer b) long c) longest d) most long

Week11: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. The Egyptian Museum is full of ancient like golden masks and statues.
a) treasures b) letters c) packages d) stores
2. The makes fun sounds and speaks for cartoon characters.
a) engineer b) voice-over actor
c) doctor d) scientist
3. The police officer wore a white and a cap while working.
a) vest b) costume c) shirt d) uniform
4. She eats a healthy between meals.
a) dinner b) snack c) juice d) soup
5. We use our tongue to different flavors.
a) smell b) hear c) taste d) touch
6. This flower smells
a) loud b) bright c) sweet d) heavy
7. A giraffe's body is covered in a
a) striped coat b) spotted coat c) thick fur d) yellow fur
8. The soft pillow felt good to
a) taste b) see c) smell d) touch
9. My favorite place in the city is the because I love to read books.
a) post office b) hospital c) library d) school
10. A forest guide people learn about wild animals.
a) forgets b) teaches c) scares d) hides
11. You can see the elephant's big ears and when it walks.
a) trunk b) fur c) claws d) fingers
12. Lions, zebras, and giraffes live in the
a) kitchen b) jungle c) classroom d) river

Week12: Based on all units

1

Choose the correct answer:

1. My father always the car before we leave for work.
 a) washes b) washed c) wash d) washing
2. The zebra is than the deer but slower.
 a) heavy b) heavier c) heaviest d) more heavy
3. The whiteboard is of the teacher's desk.
 a) on b) behind c) in front d) under
4. they usually have breakfast at 7:00 A.M?
 a) Are b) Does c) Do d) Is
5. His bag is than mine, but I like the color.
 a) bigger b) big c) biggest d) more big
6. My bags are the desk. Can you reach them?
 a) in b) between c) under d) next
7. They usually do their homework on time.
 a) do b) doesn't c) aren't d) don't
8. That kitten is the animal in the pet store.
 a) smallest b) smaller c) small d) more small
9. Does Ali TV?
 a) watch b) watches c) watches d) watching
10. My little brother doesn't broccoli at all.
 a) like b) likes c) liked d) liking

Week13: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. The helps design and build strong bridges and tall buildings.
 a) nurse b) engineer c) doctor d) actor
2. We saw palm trees and tasted near the oasis.
 a) letters b) treasures c) packages d) dates
3. The clever student always knows the right
 a) subject b) answer c) page d) break
4. He can't the question.
 a) eat b) wash c) understand d) fix
5. Eating fruits gives you more
 a) energy b) books c) time d) homework
6. To stay healthy, you should daily.
 a) sleep b) exercise c) laugh d) clean
7. A sharp helps you learn fast.
 a) mind b) pencil c) noise d) dress
8. Firefighters need like ladders, oxygen tanks, and water hoses to fight fires.
 a) tools b) stripes c) furniture d) shows
9. The gave the tourists a lot of information about the Pyramids and ancient Egypt.
 a) photographer b) sailor c) tour guide d) librarian
10. You can a camel and take pictures in front of the pyramids.
 a) show b) teach c) write d) ride

Week14: Based on all units

1

Choose the correct answer:

1. That was the movie I've ever seen!
a) fun b) funnier c) funniest d) most fun
2. The book is the two blue notebooks.
a) in front b) next c) between d) in
3. Doctors usually white coats in the hospital.
a) wears b) wear c) wearing d) wore
4. This test is than the last one we took.
a) harder b) harder c) hardest d) most hard
5. I found my key to the couch cushions.
a) on b) in c) under d) next
6. My friends usually enjoy playing board games.
a) doesn't b) don't c) aren't d) didn't
7. Do you English every day?
a) study b) studys c) studies d) studying
8. The bookshelf is the wall next to the window.
a) behind b) in front of c) in d) under
9. We to the park on weekends, not weekdays.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
10. His voice is louder mine, so he sings more.
a) the b) then c) than d) this

Week15: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. A bear has to protect itself in the wild.
 a) long ears b) sharp claws c) striped coats d) small tails
2. The in the carpenter's bag included a hammer and nails.
 a) gifts b) doors c) tools d) bottles
3. We can learn about the history of our country when we go to a
 a) museum b) post office c) office d) hospital
4. She always her teeth after meals.
 a) eats b) brushes c) walks d) says
5. A zebra is easy to recognize because of its
 a) spotted coat b) big ears c) yellow fur d) striped coat
6. I like to my day.
 a) buy b) enjoy c) sit d) pay
7. A/an helps sick people in a s hospital.
 a) engineer b) carpenter c) nurse d) police officer
8. We should our hands before eating.
 a) feel b) sleep c) get d) wash
9. They up early for school.
 a) brush b) wake c) think d) say
10. The has a long tail and likes to swing from a tree to another.
 a) zebra b) bear c) monkey d) giraffe

Week 16: Based on all units

1

Choose the correct answer:

1. He his lunch at school, not at home.
 a) eats b) eat c) eating d) eaten
2. The shoes are the sofa and the door.
 a) behind b) between c) in front d) under
3. The librarian help us on Fridays.
 a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) didn't
4. This pencil is than the one I use.
 a) sharp b) more sharper c) sharpest d) sharper
5. Does your cousin in the village?
 a) lives b) lived c) live d) living
6. Of all my cousins, Reem is the one.
 a) kind b) kinder c) kindest d) most kind
7. The park bench is the big green tree.
 a) in front of b) between c) next d) in
8. He watch cartoons; he reads books instead.
 a) didn't b) don't c) not d) doesn't
9. My grandfather is the person in our family.
 a) the oldest b) older c) oldest d) most old
10. My parents in a hospital.
 a) works b) work c) working d) are working

Part 3

Monthly Evaluations

October Month - Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. A giraffe has a long neck and a coat.
a) striped b) spotted c) yellow d) loud
2. Our helps us taste food and drinks.
a) tongue b) ears c) eyes d) hands
3. The firefighter wears a special to protect himself from fire.
a) helmet b) cap c) gift d) puppet
4. The police officer helps keep people
a) hungry b) safe c) tired d) loud
5. Doctors work in hospitals and care for people.
a) happy b) kind c) busy d) sick
6. Huda pack her schoolbag every morning?
a) Is b) Does c) Do d) Are
7. Every afternoon, the children their homework.
a) do b) doing c) does d) did
8. Sarah her uniform on weekends when she visits her cousins in the countryside.
a) doesn't wears b) don't wear c) doesn't wear d) not wears
9. The students noise during class because the teacher always asks for silence.
a) don't makes b) doesn't make c) don't make d) doesn't makes
10. Do your parents Tv late at night?
a) watches b) watching c) watched d) watch

October Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. Healthy food keeps our body strong and full of
 a) sugar b) sleep c) energy d) toys
2. If someone is, they always want to help others.
 a) lazy b) kind c) angry d) greedy
3. When my teacher asks a question, I try to give the right
 a) class b) lesson c) answer d) pencil
4. My grandmother cooks tasty chicken every Friday.
 a) paper b) soup c) bed d) book
5. Fruit is a healthy.....
 a) routine b) subject c) soup d) snack
6. Tarek usually breakfast with his family.
 a) having b) had c) have d) has
7. My little brother cartoons every evening.
 a) watches b) watching c) watch d) watched
8. The students their hands before eating.
 a) washes b) wash c) washing d) washed
9. My brother any vegetables when he has lunch at our grandparents' house.
 a) doesn't eat b) don't eat c) doesn't eats d) not eat
10. your father drive to work?
 a) Does b) Do c) Is d) Are

November Month - Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. The voice-over actor makes voices for
 a) wild animals b) tools c) cartoons d) firefighters
2. A zebra has a
 a) spotted coat b) striped coat c) thick fur d) yellow skin
3. Firefighters wear special uniforms because their job is
 a) quiet b) dangerous c) slow d) boring
4. The visitors took many photos of the during their visit to Giza.
 a) post office b) shopping mall c) pyramids d) hospital
5. A shows visitors around historical places and explains their importance.
 a) doctor b) librarian c) guide d) seller
6. The blue shirt looks than the green one, especially under the sunlight.
 a) bright b) brighter c) brightest d) more bright
7. The post office is the school and the library.
 a) under b) next to c) on d) between
8. Of all the jobs, a firefighter is the one.
 a) brave b) braver c) bravest d) more brave
9. My bag is than yours.
 a) heavy b) heavier c) heaviest d) heavier
10. The science books are kept the two big vases on the library shelf.
 a) behind b) under c) between d) in front of

November Month - Model 2

1

Choose the correct answer:

1. Tourists usually visit to buy souvenirs.
 a) the hospital b) the Egyptian Museum
 c) Khan Al-Khalili bazaar d) the school
2. The carpenter built a beautiful chair with
 a) glass and paper b) wood and nails
 c) plastic and tape d) books and folders
3. Firefighters use to reach high places during emergencies.
 a) hoses b) ladders c) rulers d) helmets
4. A firefighter's job is to people and fight fires.
 a) draw b) teach c) grow d) save
5. Origami is the art of
 a) painting on walls b) folding paper into shapes
 c) drawing animals d) writing stories
6. There is a new coffee shop to the hospital.
 a) under b) in c) next d) on
7. This road is than the one near my house.
 a) long b) longer c) longest d) more long
8. My new backpack is heavier the old one.
 a) this b) the c) then d) than
9. The large statue stands proudly of the museum entrance and greets all the visitors.
 a) in front b) behind c) between d) under
10. This is the man in the world. He is 200 kg.
 a) heavy b) heaviest c) heavier d) heaviest

Part 4

General Practice

Al Azhar Practice

1

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Sami loves (sports - animals - books).
2. Sami's pet is a (cat - bird - dog).
3. Malak's cat likes to (play - eat - sleep) all day.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

happy - hospital - patients - feel

- Hana : What do you do?
- Nour : I'm a doctor. I love to go to the ① and help people.
- Hana : Oh, that sounds lovely! Do you see a lot of ②?
- Nour : Yes! I often see many patients and help them.
- Hana : And how do you ③ when you do that?
- Nour : I feel ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Alia, I live in a big city. Every morning, I ride my bike to school. My brother walks because his school is near. After school, I help my mom cook dinner. My dad works at a factory that makes cars. On weekends, we often visit our grandparents in the countryside. Our city has tall buildings and busy streets, but I still love it.

Term 1

Revision

A

Answer the following questions.

1. What does Alia's dad do?



2. Where do Alia and her family go on weekends?



B

Choose the correct answer:

3. Alia lives in a (village - town - big city).

4. Alia's brother walks to (shop - school - home).

5. The underlined word "tall" means (short - strong - long).

4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A grows vegetables and fruits on a farm.

a) pilot

b) farmer

c) baker

2. He often to the library on Fridays.

a) go

b) going

c) goes

3. You can see many old paintings at the

a) zoo

b) museum

c) hospital

4. The cat is the table.

a) front

b) under

c) next

5. You can send letters and packages at the

a) cinema

b) post office

c) school

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. next - My - home - is - the - to - school.



2. park - play - the - I - in - football.



3. looks - A - books - librarian - after - the.



4. does - How - go - Malak - school - to?



5. I - room - TV - the - in - living - watch



?

Al Azhar Practice

2

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Life on a farm is (busy - funny - easy - strong).
2. Farmers wake up early to (give - feed - meet - eat) animals.
3. (Cows - Cats - sleep - Sheep) provide wool.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

feel - trash - feed - clothes

- Sami** : What do you do to help your community?
Belal : I collect ① and ② the animals.
Sami : Oh, that's nice! Do you like to help people?
Belal : Sure! I often give ③ to poor people.
Sami : And how do you ④ when you do that?
Belal : I feel proud.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Ali; I love my country so much. Every morning, I ride my bike and look at its beautiful streets. My brother and I always go to The Nile River and watch the sunset there. **He** says that Cairo has many great places to visit. I didn't visit every city in Egypt, but I still love it.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What does Ali do every morning?
 ▶
2. Where do Ali and his brother always go?
 ▶



Choose the correct answer:

3. Ali lives in (Cairo - Alexandria - Hurghada)
4. Ali's brother says that Cairo has many (nice shops - tall school - great places) to visit.
5. The underlined word "He" refers to (Ali's father - Ali - Ali's brother).



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A helps sick people.
a) doctor b) farmer c) baker
2. We always our homework after school.
a) do b) doing c) does
3. I visit my dad at school. He's a
a) doctor b) teacher c) firefighter
4. The book is the bag and the chair.
a) front b) between c) under d) next
5. are marks left by feet.
a) Fingerprints b) Photos c) Footprints



Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. doesn't - fast- eating - Mohamed - like - food.
▶
2. visit - family - every - Luxor - My - year.
▶
3. your - you - community - in- help - Do ?
▶ ?
4. village - next - My - is - to - Nile - The-River.
▶
5. looks - A - patients - doctor - after - the.
▶

Al Azhar Practice

3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- Sam visits the museum (every day - once a month - every weekend - never).
- Sam goes with (his cousins - his friends - his teachers - his parents).
- Sam always loves the (pictures - mummy room - bazaar - golden masks).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

uniform - school - teacher - subjects

- Sara** : What does your mom do?
Mina : She's a ① She works at a big ②
Sara : That's cool! What does she wear to work?
Mina : She wears a ③ every day.
Sara : What ④ does she teach?
Mina : She teaches English and Science. She really loves it!

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Nader is a young tour guide. He works in Cairo and loves his job. Every day, he takes tourists to famous places like the Pyramids, the Nile River, and the Egyptian Museum. He wears a white shirt and a cap. Sometimes, he rides a camel to show them the desert. He also talks about history and takes pictures of the group. He is a kind and helpful person. His job is more exciting than an office job. He says, "I love showing people my country!"

A Answer the following questions:

- What is Nader's job?
▶
- What does Nader usually wear?
▶

B

Choose the correct answer:

3. Every day, Nader takes (tourists - teachers - students) to famous places like the Pyramids
4. Sometimes, he rides a/an (horse - camel - gazelle) to show them the desert.
5. He says, "I love showing people my (car - country - school)!"

4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The explained the history of the pyramids.
a) carpenter b) tour guide c) teacher
2. We took many of the Nile River.
a) pictures b) stones c) packages
3. The has many colorful gifts and small models.
a) camel b) museum c) bazaar
4. My uncle works as a carpenter and he tools every day.
a) use b) used c) uses
5. The school is the hospital and the mall.
a) in front b) between c) next

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. reads - She - every - a - book - night.



2. visits - museum - the - family - My - on - Friday.



3. library - A - quiet - is - a - place.



4. between - the - notebook - is - and - the - The pen - book.



5. carries - trunk - its - elephant - things - The - with.



Practice

4

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. The town is a (bad - old - great - far) place to live.
2. The town has a big library where people borrow (packages - books - letters - clothes).
3. People buy gifts from the (hospital - shopping mall - library - school).
4. Doctors help sick people in the (stores - restaurants - hospital - museums).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (teacher - police officer - photographer - carpenter) helps and saves people in danger.
2. You can find many (packages - letters - gifts - treasures) in the temple.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hard - nose - hear - shapes

Our amazing body helps us explore the world. Our eyes let us see colors and ① Our ears help us ② many different sounds. We use our ③ to smell nice or bad smells. Our mouth helps us taste delicious food. Our hands also help us feel soft or ④ things.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar, and I live in Egypt. It is a wonderful country. Every morning, I wake up early and brush my teeth. Then I eat a healthy breakfast with my family. My dad works as a tour guide, and he meets many tourists. He always tells them about the Pyramids and the Nile River. We don't have classes on Fridays, so I play football with my friends in the park. I really enjoy my life here.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Omar lives in (France - Egypt - Italy - Syria).

Revision

2. Omar eats a healthy (snack - breakfast - dinner - lunch) with his family.

E

Answer the following questions:

3. What does Omar's dad do? ▶
4. What does Omar do on Fridays? ▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He often (go) to the library.
2. The blue car is (fast) than the red car.
3. The cat is (front) the table
4. She (do) not like to eat sweets.

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda was at school to receive her medal. ()
2. Maddie and Peggy sent a letter to Wanda. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. How did Wanda feel when she got the letter? ▶
4. How did the popular girls treat Wanda? ▶

7

Punctuate the following:

- o where do you go after school

8

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"My daily routine"

▶ Ideas to help you:

brush - school - homework

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Practice

5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Volunteers plant trees in the (streets - park - home - school).
2. I collect old (books - food - clothes - toys) for the poor.
3. We clean the streets every (week - day - year - month).
4. We feel (sad - tired - proud - angry) of our town.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (doctor - farmer - carpenter - teacher) uses wood to make furniture.
2. Camels are known for their ability to live in the (river - desert - jungle - ocean).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

River - cotton - life - peaceful

Egypt is a beautiful country. In El-Delta, farmers grow ① and rice. People in the south are known for their pottery and carpets. Everyone in Egypt works together to make their ② great. The Nile ③ is important for many cities in Egypt. Our country is always ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Sara, and I love my job as a wildlife photographer. I travel to many places and take pictures of wild animals. It's an exciting job. I often spend a long time waiting to get the perfect shot. My favorite animal to photograph is the lion. I also know a voice-over actor who makes voices for cartoons and characters. Her job sounds fun!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Sara's job is a wildlife (doctor - photographer - teacher - engineer).
2. Sara takes pictures of (pet - farm - wild - happy) animals.

Revision

B Answer the following questions:

3. What is Sara's favorite animal to photograph? ►
4. What does a voice-over actor do? ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She (play) basketball every Tuesday.
2. The giraffe is (tall) than the elephant.
3. The book is (in) the table.
4. My brother (do) not like fish.

6. The Story

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda had one hundred dresses. ()
2. Miss Mason read Wanda's father's letter. ()

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Wanda leave her school? ►
4. What did Maddie do when girls annoyed Wanda? ►

7 Punctuate the following:

- my father works as a teacher and his students love him.

8 Write a paragraph of (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite animal"

► Ideas to help you:

What it looks like - Where it lives
- What it eats

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

6

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. A doctor helps (clever - sick - strong - busy) people.
2. A firefighter stops (cars - fires - trains - planes).
3. Police officers (teach - protect - clean - build) our community.
4. Engineers design amazing (uniforms - clothes - buildings - hats).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The (carpenter - doctor - teacher - police officer) makes his students smarter and tells them new things.
2. You can send letters and packages at the (cinema - post office - school - museum).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mountain - colorful - monastery - desert

Mount Sinai is a popular place in South Sinai. Along the way, you can see ① rocks and ② plants. At the top of the ③, there is a famous ④ Don't forget to wear warm clothes, especially at nighttime.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is John, and I live in a big city. Every morning, I love to see the boats on the sea. My sister often visits the library to borrow books. We have a small museum with many ancient treasures. Sometimes, we eat at the restaurants in the shopping mall. Our city is a good place to live because it is not as crowded as the capital, and the air is cleaner. We feel happy here.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. John lives in a big (town - city - village - house).
2. John's sister visits the library to (buy - sell - borrow - plant) books.

Revision

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What does John love to see every morning?



4. Why does John think his city is a good place to live?



5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Does he (visiting) the Pyramids every year?

2. The giraffe is the (tall) animal.

3. The ball is (between) the box.

4. My parents (not / work) on Fridays.

6. The Story

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. Wanda drew and (wrote - planted - liked - signed) all the drawings.

2. Wanda wasn't there to receive her (car - medal - bag - dress).

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Why wasn't Wanda at the ceremony?



4. What did Wanda wear every day?



7

Punctuate the following:

○ what is your favorite subject



8

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"My dream job"

▶ Ideas to help you:

What it is - What I do - Why I like it

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

7

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Layla is in grade (three - four - five - six).
2. Layla's favorite subject is (math - English - science - art).
3. She plays basketball with her (family - teachers - friends - classmates).
4. They practice basketball (two - three - four - five) times a week.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (police officer - farmer - firefighter - doctor) uses water to stop fires.
2. A (cat - zebra - dog - dolphin) is a wild animal.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

long - engineer - brave - fur

Animals are amazing creatures. The giraffe has a very ① neck. Lions are big and ② They have beautiful yellow ③ Elephants are the biggest land animals. A clever ④ designs zoos for these animals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is a country with a rich history. The Pyramids are very old and tall. They are made of giant stones. Tourists come from everywhere to see them. The Nile River is the longest river in the world, flowing through Egypt. People sail feluccas on the Nile. Egyptian food is also very delicious, like Kushary and Falafel.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The Pyramids are made of giant (wood - stones - plastic - liquid).
2. The Nile River is the (shortest - widest - longest - tallest) river in the world.

B Answer the following questions:

3. What do people sail on the Nile River?

4. Give two examples of delicious Egyptian food mentioned.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My parents (works) in a big hospital.

2. The red apple is (sweet) than the green apple.

3. The cat is (next) of the sofa.

4. He (do) not like to wake up late.

6. The Story

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Maddie and Peggy (regretted - went - were - signed) to Wanda.

2. Maddie felt (funny - terrible - silly - fine) after reading the letter.

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the girls write in the letter to Wanda?

4. What lesson did Peggy and Maddie learn?

7 Punctuate the following:

o where is your school located

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Our senses"

► Ideas to help you:

smell - see - hear - touch - taste

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

8

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. The city is a (quiet - busy - small - slow) place.
2. People send letters at the (hospital - bank - post office - park).
3. The shopping mall is full of people buying (food - books - clothes - flowers).
4. They have many (hospitals - parks - malls - offices) for playing.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (plumber - carpenter - electrician - driver) is a person who builds things from wood.
2. (Doctors - Fishermen - Teachers - Carpenters) use their big nets to catch fish.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

community - protect - clean - help

I live in Aswan. Our ❶ is a great place to live. Everyone tries to ❷ each other. We always work together to keep our streets ❸ Police officers ❹ people and keep our city safe. Being kind and polite makes our community stronger.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Farmers play a very important role in our country. They work hard to grow fresh food that we eat every day. They grow many crops like rice, cotton, and vegetables in their fields. They also raise animals like chickens and cows. Farmers wake up early and work long hours, but they love their job because they help feed many people. We should thank them for their hard work.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Farmers (raise - grow - buy - work) food that we eat every day.
2. The underlined word "They" refers to the (farmers - vegetables - fields - animals).

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What crops do farmers grow?
4. Why do farmers love their job?

▶

▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I (eats) breakfast at 7 AM every day.
2. The elephant is (big) than the monkey.
3. The ball is (in) the table and the chair.
4. We (not / watch) TV in the morning.

6. The Story

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ms. Mason said that (Peggy - Wanda - Maddie - Laila) won the competition signed.
2. Maddie didn't (play - help - speak - work) Wanda.

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Wanda and her family go?
4. What lesson did Peggy and Maddie learn?

▶

▶

7

Punctuate the following:

- what does ahmed like to eat?

▶

8

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite food"

▶ Ideas to help you:

What it is.
What it tastes like.
Why I like it.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

9

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Egypt has many cool (houses - tents - places - boats).
2. Luxor has amazing old (temples - cinemas - shops - schools).
3. (Cairo - Luxor - Alexandria - Giza) has a very famous library.
4. Alexandria is great for (swimming - eating - playing - driving) and fishing.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (tour guide - voice-over actor - writer - singer) tells stories and makes voices for cartoons.
2. The students clean the park and help their (roads - buses - community - market).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nice - help - museum - learn

My city has many important places. The school is a place where students ① The ② has many ancient treasures and tells us about the past. If you are hungry, you can find many ③ restaurants. People always ④ each other here.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Karim, and I live in a village by the Nile River. Life here is peaceful. Every morning, I help my grandfather on his farm. He grows fresh vegetables like tomatoes and cucumbers. My grandmother makes delicious bread. In the afternoon, I often play with my friends by the river. We sometimes see feluccas sailing. The Nile is very important for our village.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Karim lives in a (city - village - town - country) by the Nile River.
2. Karim helps his grandfather on his (farm - boat - car - house).

Revision

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of vegetables does Karim's grandfather grow?

4. What does Karim do in the afternoon?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They (goes) to the park every weekend.

2. This book is (heavy) than that one.

3. The ball is (in) to the tree.

4. He (not / play) video games.

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Maddie helped Wanda when girls bullied her. ()

2. No one realized that Wanda wasn't there to receive her medal. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the girls send the letter to Wanda? ►

4. What did Peggy and Maddie feel when they read the letter? ►

7

Punctuate the following:

○ how long does the horse live

8

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"Our Community"

► Ideas to help you:

clean - collect - feed

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice

10

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. We should eat a lot of fruits and (sweets - vegetables - chicken - meat).
2. Drinking (juice - soda - tea - water) is good for our body.
3. We shouldn't eat too many (sweets - fruits - vegetables - water).
4. Good (habits - homes - books - cars) make us feel better and live longer.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The zebra has a (striped - spotted - colorful - yellow) coat.
2. We should protect the animals' natural (claws - habitats - visitors - caves).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

truck - save - tools - uniform

Firefighters are very brave people. They wear a special ¹ and use strong ² to fight fires. Their job is to ³ people and animals from danger. They drive a big ⁴ to quickly reach places. Firefighters work hard to keep our community safe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has beautiful cities along the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. Alexandria is a famous city on the Mediterranean. People enjoy swimming and fishing there. The weather is often sunny, which is perfect for beach activities. Hurghada, on the Red Sea, is known for its beautiful beaches and sea life. Many tourists visit these cities to relax and enjoy the water.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "there" refers to (Egypt - Alexandria - Hurghada - Cairo).
2. Hurghada is on the (Mediterranean - Red - White - Blue) Sea.

Revision

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What do people enjoy doing in Alexandria?

4. Why do many tourists visit these cities?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My brother (study) English every Monday.

2. The lamp is (on) the desk and the chair

3. It's (legal) to smoke in a hospital.

4. They (not / like) loud music.

6. The Story

A

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Wanda's absence was quickly noticed by everyone. ()

2. Wanda didn't reply to the letter. ()

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Wanda's family move to the city? ▶

4. Why wasn't Wanda at the ceremony? ▶

7

Punctuate the following:

○ we live in cairo and love it.

8

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"A visit to the zoo"

► Ideas to help you:

school trip - animals - enjoy

Practice

11

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1. Hany lives in a small (park - village - zoo - city).
2. Hany's school is next to the (post office - zoo - park - bank).
3. Behind the post office, there is a (bank - park - factory - garage).
4. Hany plays (football - basketball - volleyball - tennis) in the park with his friends.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (doctor - carpenter - farmer - teacher) uses wood to make furniture.
2. Camels are known for living in the (river - desert - forest - ocean).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

kind - deserts - pets - water

Animals are wonderful! They live everywhere: in our homes as
 ① and in the wild, like forests, ② and oceans.
 All animals need food and ③ Some eat plants, some
 eat other animals. They all help make our world special. We must be
 ④ to them!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali is twenty-four years old. He is from Egypt; he lives in Alexandria. Ali is a teacher. He works in a language school in Alex. He teaches English to students. He likes English because it helps people to understand each other. He works very hard. He often teaches thirty-six hours a week. He likes living in Alexandria because it has warm weather and has many interesting places to visit.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali is a (doctor - farmer - teacher - footballer).
2. The underlined word "it" refers to (students - Ali - books - English).

Revision

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Ali live?

4. How old is Ali?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What Omar says is (logical). It doesn't make sense.

2. This car is (fast) than your car.

3. The cat is (behind) of the chair.

4. Does she (plays) video games?

6. The Story

A

Choose the correct answer

1. Wanda drew (a thousand - a hundred - ten - million) dresses.

2. Peggy annoyed Wanda because she was (funny - poor - silly - short).

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What did the girls write in the letter to Wanda?

4. Who read the letter from Wanda's father?

7

Punctuate the following:

o ahmed and omar are good friends.

8

Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"A blog about the places in Egypt"

► Ideas to help you:

Pyramids – River Nile – The Egyptian Museum

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 5

Listening Scripts



Practice on Unit

Sara eats eggs and brown bread for breakfast.

At school, she plays in the garden with her friends.

After school, she visits a restaurant. She says,

"I'm enjoying the smell!" Her dad smiles and says,

"Good food tastes better when shared."



Practice on Unit

Sara wears a galabeya for the Spring Festival.

She sings traditional songs with her family and

helps clean the community park. Her brother

collects bottles, and her mother plants trees.

They celebrate together. Sara says, "I feel so happy when we help our town!"



Practice on Unit

In a village, there lives a giant who has a

wonderful garden. In his garden, there are two

trees, beautiful flowers, and soft green grass.

There are colorful birds singing in the trees

and bees on the plants. Every afternoon on

their way home from school, the local children

come to play in the giant garden. The lovely

garden always makes the children happy.



Practice on Unit

"Omar visits the Egyptian Museum with his

class. They meet a tour guide who talks about

treasures and colorful rocks. Omar takes pictures

and buys a leaflet about St. Catherine Mountain.

After that, they walk to the Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar.



Practice on Unit

"Lina wants to become a doctor. She thinks

helping sick people is the kindest thing to do. Her

father is a firefighter. He wears the thickest coat

and the heaviest helmet. Lina says, 'My dad has

the bravest job. I want to be helpful too.'



Al Azhar Practice

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

"Hello! My name is Sami. I love animals. I

have a pet dog named Max. Max is playful and

likes to run in the park. My friend, Malak, has a

cat. Her cat likes to sleep all day. Animals make

our lives happy!"



Al Azhar Practice

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Life on a farm is busy! Farmers wake up early

to feed animals. Cows give milk, and chickens give

eggs. Sheep provide wool. Farmers also grow fruits

and vegetables. They work hard to provide food.



Al Azhar Practice

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Sam visits the Egyptian Museum every

weekend with his parents. They see old treasures,

Term 1

Listening Scripts

golden masks, and statues. Sam always loves the mummy room. After the museum, they walk through Khan al-Khalili bazaar. They buy small gifts and take pictures. Sam thinks the museum is fun and very interesting.

General Practice 4

"Welcome to my town! It's a great place to live. We have a big library where people borrow many books. The shopping mall has many stores, and people buy gifts there. Our town also has a hospital where doctors help sick people. Life here is always busy!"

General Practice 5

Volunteers often plant trees in the park. I collect old clothes for the poor. We also clean the streets every month. Everyone helps, and we feel proud of our beautiful community. It is the cleanest place to live.

General Practice 6

People have many different jobs in our city. A doctor helps sick people. A firefighter stops fires and saves people. A police officer protects our community and helps keep order. Engineers design amazing buildings and bridges.

General Practice 7

My name is Layla. I am in grade four. My favorite subject is science. I love learning about animals and plants. After school, I play basketball with my friends. We practice three

times a week. Basketball is my favorite sport because it is exciting.

General Practice 8

Our city is a busy place. We have many important buildings. The post office is next to the bank, where people send letters. The hospital helps sick people. The shopping mall is always full of people buying clothes and gifts. We also have many parks for playing.

General Practice 9

Egypt has many cool places! Cairo is a very big city, and it has giant pyramids! Luxor is another city with amazing old temples. Alexandria is a city by the sea and it has a very famous library. It is also great for swimming and fishing!

General Practice 10

Eating healthy food is important. We should eat a lot of fruits and vegetables every day. Drinking water is also good for our body. We shouldn't eat too many sweets or fast food. These habits make us feel better and live longer.

General Practice 11

Hany lives in a small village. His school is next to the post office. Behind the post office, there is a garage. Hany plays football in the park with his friends every day after school. He loves it!

Part 6

Answers Key



Answers Key

Unit 1 Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) garden 2) senses
3) touch 4) understand

2 Match the sense to the organ:

- 1-e (sight – eyes)
2-d (hearing – ears)
3-c (smell – nose)
4-a (taste – tongue)
5-b (touch – skin / hands)

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) (c) understand 2) (a) safety

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- The five senses are sight, hearing, smell, taste and touch.
2- Because if we touch something hot, we quickly pull away to avoid getting hurt.

4 Complete the sentences:

- 1) see 2) hear 3) taste
4) touch 5) smell

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (b) tongue 2) (c) smell
3) (c) see 4) (a) hear
5) (c) senses 6) (b) flowers
7) (d) stay safe 8) (b) fire
9) (a) ears 10) (c) eyes

6 Reorder the words:

- 1) I can hear the birds singing.
2) I can smell the beautiful flowers.
3) How do our senses help us stay safe?
4) If we smell smoke, there's a fire.
5) We'll learn about our amazing senses.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) M s. Mona is our teacher.
2) W hat a beautiful day in the school garden!
3) S ami is a good student.
4) W e'll learn about our amazing senses.
5) S enses help us understand the world.

8 Write a paragraph

How I use my five senses in my classroom

We have five senses. We use them to help us at school. We use our eyes to see colors and shapes. We use our nose to smell flowers. We use our tongue to taste

sweet and sour food. We use our skin to touch things. We use our ears to hear our teacher.

Unit 1 Lesson (2)

1 Complete the sentences:

- 1) rises 2) sing 3) boils 4) watches
5) اجابة صحيحة لا تحتاج تعديل 6) helps
7) اجابة صحيحة لا تحتاج تعديل 8) goes
9) plays 10) اجابة صحيحة لا تحتاج تعديل

2 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (a) study 2) (b) finishes 3) (b) learns
4) (c) washes 5) (c) rains 6) (c) fixes
7) (b) bakes 8) (b) bark 9) (b) teach
10) (c) tries

3 Read and complete the text

- 1) healthy food 2) stay healthy
3) give her energy 4) my healthy day

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) (b) fruit and vegetables 2) (a) smart

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- She gets up early and eats healthy meals.
2- To stay strong and sharp.

5 Fill in with the correct preposition:

- 1) at 2) during 3) for 4) in 5) between

6 Reorder the words:

- 1) She brushes her teeth every morning.
2) For breakfast, Sara eats healthy food.
3) Sara drinks a lot of water between classes.
4) In the afternoon, she does her homework.
5) Why does Sara eat healthy food?

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) D o you think you're healthy, Adam?
2. My friend N ader lives in G iza.
3. My cousin J udy and I play video games on T uesday.
4. Does S arah eat healthy food?
5. H e does exercises in the morning.

Unit 1 Lesson (3)

1 Complete with "at" or "ate":

- 1) hate mat date
gate fat hat

2 Complete with "it" or "ite":

2) fit kite nine sit

3 Read and complete:

1) restaurant 2) smell 3) coins 4) share

4 Reorder the words:

- 1) Why did Goha sit outside the restaurant?
- 2) He smelled something wonderful from a restaurant.
- 3) Do you share your food with friends?
- 4) Goha was walking through the market.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Goha took out a few coins from his pocket.
- 2) Let's share this soup.
- 3) I can't pay for the soup.
- 4) Do you have money?

6 Write a paragraph:

Sharing with others

It is good to share things with other people. You can share food with your brother or sister. You can share books and toys with friends. It's great to love and share.

Unit 1 Lessons (4-5)

1 Fill in:

First: I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth.

Next: I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Then: I go to school, where I study and play with my friends.

After school: I have lunch with my family.

After that: I do my homework and then play sports for one hour.

Finally: I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (a) breakfast 2) (b) strong 3) (d) break
- 4) (c) dinner 5) (d) life 6) (c) snack
- 7) (d) daily 8) (a) fruit 9) (c) early
- 10) (a) habits

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) important 2) snack 3) during
- 4) break time

4 Reorder the words:

- 1) I follow the same daily routine.
- 2) I have a shower in the morning every day.

3) Heba has a break time to relax.

4) Nour brushes her teeth before bed time every night.

5) It is important to stay healthy and active.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Do you think you're healthy, Adam?
- 2) My friend Nader lives in Giza..
- 3) My cousin Judy and I play video games on Tuesday.

6 Read and order the events:

First: I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth.

Next: I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Then: I go to school, where I study and play with my friends.

After school: I have lunch with my family.

After that: I do my homework and then play sports for one hour.

Finally: I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.

7 Write a paragraph:

How can you stay healthy?

You should have a daily routine to stay healthy. It is important to have good health. You should eat healthy food. You should have a shower every day. You should wake up early and sleep early.

Practice (1) on unit (1)

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1) 6:00 a.m 2) brush my teeth.
- 3) milk and fruit

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1) routine 2) wake 3) dressed 4) healthy

3 Read the text and:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Omar eats a bowl of cereal with milk and a banana.
- 2) He takes a shower, brushes his teeth and reads a story.

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) football 4) 9:00 p.m. 5) library

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) sleeps 2) like 3) nose
- 4) garden 5) food

Answers Key

5 Reorder the words:

- 1) We practice three times every week.
- 2) Do you think you are healthy?
- 3) We eat a lot of vegetables and fruit.
- 4) What do they have for breakfast?
- 5) I wake up early every day.

Practice (2) on unit (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) hungry 2) soup
- 3) money for the smell 4) the sound of coins

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) smell 2) garden

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) starts 2) homework 3) sports
- 4) strong

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) never 2) nine

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) Sara wakes up at 6:00 a.m. every morning.
- 4) She has dinner, brushes her teeth and goes to bed.

5 Read and write the correct form:

- 1) play 2) like 3) taste 4) studies

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) She sat in the back.
- 2) She said she had a hundred dresses.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Does your brother have a daily routine?

8 Write a paragraph:

How to prepare for school

First, I get up early in the morning. Next, I brush my teeth. Then, I get dressed. After that, I have breakfast. Finally, I go to school.

Unit 2 Lesson (1)

1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) collect 2) volunteer 3) plant
- 4) feeds 5) community

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1) volunteer 2) collect 3) plant 4) feed

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (c) feed dogs and cats 2) (c) Amira

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Every Saturday, Adam and his friends clean trash from the streets.
- 2- Helping The community is very important. (Any acceptable answer).

4 Complete the sentences:

- 1) Are 2) are 3) collect 4) feed 5) do

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Does Tarek plant trees or not?
- 2) I feed the dogs and cats.
- 3) That's cool! Do you plant trees?
- 4) Mom, Sara, and Tarek like animals.
- 5) Wow! you both do a great job.

6 Write a paragraph:

How can we help our community?

It is important to help our community. We can help our community in many ways. We can plant trees in street and parks. We can feed dogs and cats. We can collect clothes for poor people.

Unit 2 Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) goes 2) sing 3) likes 4) don't play
- 5) doesn't eat 6) don't visit 7) Do
- 8) Does 9) Do 10) Does

2 Read and complete:

- 1) traffic 2) ground 3) schools 4) bins

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct:

- 1) (b) school bus 2) (c) difficult

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- We can put new bins everywhere.
- 2- We can help our town to become great. (Any acceptable answer)

4 Read and write the correct form:

- 1) don't like 2) don't live
- 3) doesn't eat 4) Do
- 5) play 6) doesn't leave
- 7) don't understand 8) Does

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Does your street have this problem?
- 2) There will be fewer cars on the road.
- 3) We don't need to use cars every day.

6 Write a paragraph:

Community problems

Our community has many problems. One big problem is traffic, especially near schools. Another problem is trash on the streets. We can take the school bus to reduce cars. We can buy new bins to make our street very clean.

Unit 2 Lesson (3)

1 Read the text and:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (c) crafts 2) (b) shared

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Life in Delta and Upper Egypt.
(Any acceptable answer).
- 2- Delta is in the north and Upper Egypt is in the south.

2 Complete with "f" or "v":

van – flag – forest – vest

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (a) illogical 2) (b) illegal
- 3) (c) disagree 4) (c) irresponsible
- 5) (b) irrelevant 6) (b) disappeared

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1) In the Delta, they celebrate the spring festival.
- 2) Houses are painted in bright colors in Nubia.
- 3) The Egyptians are proud of their culture.
- 4) What festivals do you celebrate?

5 Write a paragraph:

"Upper Egypt Traditions"

Upper Egypt is on the south of Egypt. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors.

Unit 2 Lessons (4-5)

1 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (c) busy 2) (d) flowers

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- He was riding his scooter.

2- It feels like a big family here!

2 Read and write the correct form:

- 1) has 2) was 3) stands
- 4) stalls 5) were 6) gardens

3 Punctuate the following:

- 1) There was a beautiful old market.
- 2) My friend Ali showed me old photos.
- 3) What did the community do together?

4 Write a paragraph:

Your Neighborhood

I like my neighborhood. There are pretty flowers in the gardens. There are many schools and hospitals. We have beautiful parks to meet friends. People are in my neighborhood are very friendly. you feel like you have a big family here!

Practice (3) on unit (2)

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1) streets 2) old clothes 3) feeds

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1) community 2) plant 3) feed 4) collect

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1) There was a market.
- 2) Kids played on the roads.

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) different 4) gardens 5) pictures

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) volunteer 2) traffic
- 3) The Delta and the Upper Egypt
- 4) doesn't 5) do

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1) The houses have special design in Nubia.
- 2) They built a supermarket near here.
- 3) My grandpa told me some amazing stories.
- 4) Does he take the school bus?
- 5) What time do you get up?

Practice (4) on unit (2)

Answers Key

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) traffic 2) schools 3) trash 4) bins

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) sugar cane 2) north

3 Read and complete the text x:

- 1) volunteer 2) people
3) community 4) great

4 Read the text and:

(A) Choose the correct:

- 1) cotton 2) shorter

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) The Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world. (Any acceptable answer).
4) Because its fibers are longer than other cottons.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1) wash 2) watch
3) writes 4) disappears

6 The story

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) back 2) blue

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Peggy and Maddie annoyed her..
2) Because she was afraid of losing her friendship.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Does Talia come from the Delta?

8 Write a paragraph:

The Delta Traditions

The Delta is on the north of Egypt. In the Delta, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories. Women make beautiful clothes.

Unit 3 Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1) climb 2) trunk 3) striped 4) hunt

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (a) cat 2) (c) smooth

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- Every evening, Whiskers loves to play with a feather toy.

4- A small piece of cooked fish.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (b) giraffe 2) (c) climb 3) (b) elephant
4) (d) hunt 5) (c) bear 6) (b) zebra

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1) uses 2) hunt
3) works 4) اجابة صحيحة لا تحتاج تعديل
5) does 6) are
7) catches 8) see

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) What does Nadia's dad do?
2) Lions hunt at night.
3) The elephant has big ears.
4) Do they see lions too?
5) It must be amazing to see those animals.

6 Write a paragraph:

Your favorite animal

My favorite animal is cats. Kitty is my pet cat. It has soft yellow fur and blue eyes. It loves to play with my toys. It can run fast. It likes eating fish.

Unit 3 Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1) wild 2) pets
3) protect 4) important

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct:

- 1) (d) big 2) (b) more

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- My favorite animal.
(Any acceptable answer).
4- They can run at around 88 kph.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (b) bigger spaces 2) (b) daily
3) (b) caring for them 4) (c) stronger
5) (b) taller

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1) bigger 2) colder 3) taller
4) lazier 5) healthier 6) safer

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Animals need our help to stay healthy.
2) Do dogs need some exercise?
3) Vets check animals' health.

6 Write a paragraph:

How to take care of your pet

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need some exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables. Birds need cleaner cages. Fish need tanks.

Unit 3 Lesson (3)

1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (c) clever 2) (c) cave 3) (d) tricks
4) (c) catching 5) (d) wise 6) (c) footprints

2 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct:

- 1) (a) strong 2) (c) sick

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- The fox saw many footprints going into the cave, but none came out.
4- We can learn from the other's mistakes.
(Any acceptable answer)

3 Write 4 words that start with each blend:

- 1) frown - frog - friend - fruit
2) plane - play - plant - plum
3) dress - drink - draw - drum

4 Match the words:

- (1 - c) A **cave** : is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live.
(2 - d) A **fox** : is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur.
(3 - a) **Footprints** : are marks made by feet.
(4 - b) **Hunt** : to look for and catch animals for food.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Please, come visit me before I die.
2) Do you think all animals are friendly?
3) Did Ahmed like the story?

Unit 3 Lessons (4-5)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) mountains 2) danger
3) trees 4) save

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (a) sea 2) (c) nets
3) (b) pollution 4) (d) habitats
5) (b) Endangered 6) (a) remain

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (b) at risk 2) (c) animals in danger

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Because people build homes in its habitat.
4- Endangered animals.
(Any acceptable answer)

4 Read and write the correct form:

- 1) faces 2) are 3) lives
4) cats 5) cut 6) eats

5 Read and match

- (1 - b) (2 - d) (3 - a) (4 - c)

6 Write a report about an endangered animal.

(The student's own answer)

Practice (5) on unit (3)

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1) guide 2) night 3) TV program

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1) safe 2) Vets
3) wild 4) guards

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Because he was too weak.
2) He saw animals go in, but none came out.

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) sick 4) none 5) others' mistakes

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) endangered species 2) Egypt
3) taller 4) pollution 5) bigger

5 Reorder the words:

- 1) I watch a TV program about animals.
2) What animals do visitors see?
3) It is amazing to see lions.
4) Why does Mona like her pet?
5) We should care for all animals.

Practice (6) on unit (3)

Answers Key

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) special attention 2) Elephants
3) stronger 4) Vets

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) giraffe 2) challenges

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) spotted 2) striped 3) sharp 4) claws

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (b) his class 2) (c) hunting

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) The forest guide shows the visitors different animals.
4) Ali feels sad but wants to help.

5 Read and write the correct:

- 1) bigger 2) taller 3) lazier 4) braver

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) T 2) F

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Miss Mason announced it.
2) There were one hundred dress drawings.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) The Arabian Leopard is an endangered animal.

8 Write a paragraph:

Your Pet

I like pet animals. I have a pet bird. It is a parrot. I call it Coco. I care for it daily. It has colorful feathers. I like to play with it. I like it very much.

Practice (7) based on units 1-2-3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) desert 2) long 3) fur 4) travelling

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) Jinglyng 2) greedy

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) grow 2) catch
3) famous 4) people

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) healthy 2) yummy

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) She is 10 years old.
4) Because I she can talk to her mom and ad.

5 Read and write the correct form:

- 1) goes 2) colder 3) doesn't 4) illegal

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) She wore a faded blue dress.
2) There were one hundred drawings.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) My friend Nader lives in Giza.

8 Write a paragraph:

I help my community.

I like to help my community. I collect clothes for people who need them. I plant trees in the streets and in the park. I feed cats and dogs. I also volunteer and help people. This makes me happy.

Practice (8) based on units 1-2-3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) A healthy breakfast 2) water
3) play outside 4) strong

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) craft 2) claws

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1) ears 2) trunk
3) shower 4) animals

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) pollution 2) air

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) Throwing trash on the ground or in rivers makes our water and land unhealthy.
4) Recycling or walking.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1) Do 2) needs 3) nicer 4) don't throw

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) F

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) In her closet all lined up.
2) Peggy and Maddie.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) There are big hotels and buildings in Cairo.

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements

The Upper Egypt

Upper Egypt is on the south of Egypt. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. Men wear turbans on their heads.

Unit 4 Lesson (1)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1) pyramids 2) camels
3) Museums 4) gifts

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (c) Luxor 2) (b) calm

B) Answer the following questions:

- She enjoyed a peaceful boat ride on the Nile River.
She enjoyed having a boat ride on the Nile River.)
- Sarah took a hot air balloon ride over the West Bank.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (c) first 2) (c) gifts 3) (c) treasures
4) (c) tour guide 5) (c) treasures
6) (c) stones 7) (c) bazar 8) (c) country

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1) What do tourists do in Egypt?
2) What will Ali and John visit?
3) I like to visit the Pyramids.

4) We get water from the Nile River.

5) Look at the tall Cairo Tower.

5 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

Places to visit in Egypt

We can visit many places in Egypt. We can visit the Pyramids in Giza. We can ride camels in the Pyramids. We can visit the Grand Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see, and history too!

Unit 4 Lesson (2)

1 Write the correct preposition under each picture:

behind - between - in - on - in front of -
under - above - next to

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1) school 2) borrow
3) sick 4) shopping mall

3 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (b) in front 2) (c) hospital
3) (d) between 4) (c) supermarket
5) (a) behind 6) (c) school
7) (b) next 8) (a) shopping mall
9) (c) in 10) (a) above
11) (d) post office 12) (a) under
13) (d) on 14) (d) front of

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1) between 2) next
3) in 4) between 5) in

5 Punctuate the following:

1. I live in a village next to the Nile.
2. Which school does Zain learn at?
3. Marwa and Nada go to school on foot.
4. When did he go to Aswan?

Unit 4 Lesson (3)

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) True 2) false 3) True
4) False 5) True 6) False
7) True 8) False 9) True
10) False

2 Read and write the following numbers in words:

- 1) a million 2) a thousand
3) ten million 4) a hundred thousand
5) a billion 6) a hundred million

Answers Key

- 7) hundred 8) ten thousand

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) - "Five **billion**, three hundred twenty-one **million**, eight hundred seventy-six **thousand**, and four **hundred**."
 2) - "Seven **billion**, fifty **million**, one hundred twenty-three **thousand**, six **hundred**, and seventy-eight".

4 Choose the correct word

- 1) pear 2) bin 3) pan 4) peak
 5) bat 6) bond 7) pig 8) pet

Unit 4 Lessons (4-5)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) South Sinai 2) adventure
 3) climb 4) top

2 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (c) Cairo 2) (b) Shiny gold treasures

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- In Giza. 4- A visit to Cairo.
 (Any acceptable answer)

3 Choose the correct:

- 1) (a) warm clothes 2) (a) popular
 3) (a) historical places 4) (a) nature
 5) (a) bring 6) (a) along the way
 7) (a) price 8) (a) leaflet

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1) Why should we protect animals?
 2) People can learn about history in Luxor.
 3) China has one of the world's largest populations.

5 Write a paragraph of (24) words using the following guiding elements:

"A trip to museum"

Last week I went on a trip to the museum. I went with my family. We saw a lot of ancient Egyptian treasures. A tour guide helped us. He told us about the Egyptian history.

Practice (9) on unit (4)

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1) guides 2) games 3) kind

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1) triangles 2) camel
 3) museum 4) market

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1) He lives in Aswan.
 2) Because it's right by the wonderful Nile River..

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) water 4) Elephantine Island 5) boat

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) place 2) Pyramids
 3) kitchen 4) library 5) treasures

5 Reorder the words:

- 1) The Egyptian Museum has shiny gold treasures.
 2) The cat is in front of the box.
 3) The shopping mall has many stores.
 4) People send letters to stay connected.
 5) How do hospitals help sick people?

Practice (10) on unit (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) bakery 2) cars
 3) swings and slides 4) great

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) Nile River 2) Karnak

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) beautiful 2) sea 3) library 4) fresh

4 Read the text:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) tourists 2) King Tut's gold treasures

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) In the Red Sea
 4) Tourism helps Egyptians get jobs.

5 Read and write the correct form:

- 1) in front 2) in 3) between 4) above

6 The story

(A) Read and complete the text:

- 1) letter 2) unkindness

- 3) dreams 4) medal

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Miss Mason read it. 2) They felt terrible.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1) People see colorful rocks and small plants in Dahab..

8 Write a paragraph:

Places to visit in my city

There are a lot of places that we can visit in our city. We can go shopping in big malls. We can visit the Egyptian Museum. We can go on a boat ride in the River Nile.

Unit 5 Lesson (1)

1 Choose the correct word:

- 1) (a) doctor 2) (c) stop
3) (a) wear 4) (c) design
5) (a) protect 6) (a) check
7) (b) important 8) (c) uniform
9) (a) nurse 10) (b) coat

2 Read the text and answer:

- 1) help 2) care 3) check 4) wear

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) doctor 2) police officer 3) engineer
4) fire fighter 5) nurse

4 Read and check:

- 1) doctor : white coat
2) engineer : yellow helmet
3) fire fighter : red uniform.
4) nurse : blue uniform

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (b) computers 2) (c) math and science

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- On roads, bridges, buildings, and machines..

- 4- Without engineers, we would not have safe roads, tall buildings, or modern technology .

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1) What is an engineer's job related to buildings?
2) Engineers design tall buildings.

7 Write a paragraph:

Police officers

Police officers protect us from dangers. They arrest thieves and bad people. They wear a white uniform and a white cape. They work in a police station.

Unit 5 Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) animals 2) photographer
3) dangerous 4) photo

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (a) do 2) (a) a long time 3) (a) stop
4) (c) kindest 5) (d) biggest
6) (b) smartest 7) (d) busiest

3 Read and write the correct form:

- 1) tallest 2) the
3) the heaviest 4) biggest

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (d) cares for 2) (b) housewife

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- A secretary uses a computer.
4- Different jobs. (Any acceptable answer)

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1) What kind of uniform does a firefighter wear?
2) A police officer wears a white uniform.

7 Write a paragraph:

My favorite job

I want to be a doctor. Doctors work in hospitals. They help sick people. They check them. They give them medicine. Doctors are great people.

Unit 5 Lesson (3)

Complete with long vowel words.

- 1) rope 2) slide 3) stone
4) nine 5) flute

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) fits 2) Wodden
3) skilled 4) promise

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) carpenter 2) furniture
3) gift 4) wood
5) regret 6) carelessly

Answers Key

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (c) carpenter 2) (c) furniture

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- He uses a hammer and strong nails.
4- Because he is a skilled carpenter and can fix anything.

(Any acceptable answer)

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1) What color is a typical fire truck?
2) Doctors check health in big hospitals.

5 Write a paragraph:

The farmer

A farmer is an important job. A farmer works on fields. He grows fruits and vegetables. He grows many plants. He feeds cows and sheep. He works hard to give us food.

Unit 5 Lessons (4-5)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) dangerous 2) tools
3) ladder 4) oxygen tanks

2 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (a) station 2) (c) uniform
3) (b) equipment 4) (b) save
5) (c) lives 6) (c) tools
7) (c) hoses 8) (b) ladders
9) (c) oxygen tanks 10) (b) protection

3 Read and rewrite the sentences:

- 1) nicest 2) biggest
3) heaviest. 4) weakest

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1) My neighbor Omar is a firefighter.
2) What makes someone a real-life hero?
3) I don't live in Saudi Arabia.

5 Write a paragraph:

"Doctors"

Doctors work in hospitals. They wear white coats. They help sick people. They check people's health. They save lives. Nurses help the doctors.

Practice (11) on unit (5)

(خاص بالأسطر الشريف)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1) firefighter 2) a uniform 3) fold paper

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1) job 2) doctor
3) teacher 4) calm

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Paper.
2) Concentration and patience.

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) folding paper
4) glue
5) focusing better

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) doctor 2) police officer
3) cleverest 4) over actor 5) longest

5 Reorder the words:

- 1) A doctor helps sick people in hospitals.
2) The engineer designed a very tall building.
3) Does a mentor work in a school?
4) The photographer took beautiful wildlife pictures.
5) The child enjoyed playing with the puppets.

Practice (12) on unit (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) police officer 2) important
3) gate 4) helps

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) Oasis 2) engineer

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) zookeeper 2) careful
3) check 4) designer

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1) fires 2) white

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) A heavy coat and a helmet.
4) He maintains order and helps prevent crime.

- 5 Read and write the correct form:**
1) tallest 2) in front of 3) the 4) between

- 6 The story**
(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):
1) F 2) T

- (B) Answer the following questions:**
1) She was happy.
2) They learned that kindness is more important than expensive clothes.

- 7 Punctuate the following:**
1) Who do doctors and nurses help and care for?

- 8 Write a paragraph:**
Your father's job

My father is a police officer. Police officers protect us from dangers. They arrest thieves and bad people. They wear a white uniform and a white cap. They work in a police station.

Practice (13) based on units 4-5

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**
1) fire station 2) uniforms
3) fight fires 4) firefighter

- 2 Choose the correct answer:**
1) museum 2) wears

- 3 Read and complete the text**
1) Museum 2) guide 3) treasures 4) learn

- 4 Read the text and answer:**
(A) Choose the correct answer:
1) doctor 2) sick people

- (B) Answer the following questions:**
3) White
4) To check people's health and make them feel better!"

- 5 Read and write the correct form:**
1) next to 2) in front of
3) kindest 4) the

- 6 The story**
(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):
1) T 2) T
(B) Answer the following questions:
1) Miss Mason.
2) To always speak up if there was bullying.

- 7 Punctuate the following:**
1) This is a great place to visit.

- 8 Write a paragraph:**
Your favorite place in Egypt

My favorite place in Egypt is the Pyramids. I can see the big pyramids. I can see tourists. I can ride a camel. I like this place because it is great.

Practice (14) based on units 4-5

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**
1) Pyramids 2) camels
3) market 4) busy market

- 2 Choose the correct answer:**
1) protect 2) gifts

- 3 Read and complete the text:**
1) sick 2) doctor 3) nurse 4) health

- 4 Read the text and answer:**
(A) Choose the correct answer:
1) oasis 2) gift
(B) Answer the following questions:
3) They rode camels.
4) Because he wanted to say thank you.

- 5 Read and write the correct form:**
1) hardest 2) the 3) between 4) in

- 6 The story**
(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):
1) T 2) T
(B) Answer the following questions:
1) She was happy.
2) They realized they were her drawings and dreams.

- 7 Punctuate the following:**
1) I want to be a police officer.

- 8 Write a paragraph:**
A job I like

I like the doctor's job. Doctors work in hospitals. They help sick people. They save people's lives. Doctors wear white coats. I like this job because I like helping people.

Answers Key

Part 2 Units Revision Answers key

Revision on Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1) (c) smell 2) (b) hot 3) (a) colorful
- 4) (b) delicious 5) (c) taste 6) (b) ears
- 7) (b) touch 8) (b) see 9) (b) snack
- 10) (a) market 11) (a) What
- 12) (c) important 13) (b) washes
- 14) (b) does 15) (a) lunchbox 16) (d) at
- 17) (a) for 18) (d) in 19) (d) in

2 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (b) brushes 2) (a) eat 3) (d) does
- 4) (c) play 5) (b) makes 6) (a) gets
- 7) (d) wake 8) (c) says

3 Read and write the correct

- 1) wakes 2) brushes 3) eat
- 4) smiles 5) washes 6) have
- 7) says 8) feel 9) makes 10) asks
- 11) fly 12) goes 13) gets

4 Read and complete the text

- 1) smoke 2) colorful
- 3) touch 4) voices

5 Read and complete the text

- 1) dinner 2) juice 3) egg 4) yummy

6 Read and complete the text

- 1) clever 2) classes
- 3) homework 4) understand

7 Read and complete the text

- 1) healthy 2) gives
- 3) strong 4) snack

8 Punctuate the following:

1. One morning, I walked to school.
2. What are you doing?
3. She eats a healthy snack every day.
4. My sister and I love colorful butterflies.
5. Let's share this soup.
6. The food smells delicious.
7. Do you like fruits?
8. I enjoy the sound of birds.
9. We sat outside the restaurant.
10. I play with my friend Ahmed at break time.

Test (1) on unit (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) eggs and brown bread 2) garden
- 3) after 4) shared

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) market 2) Come

3 Read and complete the text

- 1) classroom 2) learn
- 3) clever 4) laughing

4 Read the text and answer

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) market 2) tasty

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) To smell the tasty food.
- 4) She felt happy.

5 Read and write the correct form ...:

- 1) say 2) enjoys 3) at 4) in

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Wanda was a quiet girl.
- 2) No, she didn't.

7 Punctuate the following:

This snack is very healthy.

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words.....

Your Healthy Day

It is important to be healthy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I sleep early and get up early to stay healthy. I feel strong when I eat healthy food.

Revision on Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (c) sugar cane 2) (b) factory
- 3) (d) volunteers 4) (b) collect
- 5) (a) sing 6) (b) collect
- 7) (b) tell 8) (a) enjoy 9) (d) watch

2 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (a) visit 2) (c) is 3) (d) sell
- 4) (a) cleans 5) (b) enjoy 6) (d) work
- 7) (b) asks

3 Read and write the correct

- 1) don't celebrate 2) work 3) feed 4) do
- 5) don't live 6) sells 7) collect
- 8) visits 9) celebrate 10) makes
- 11) tell 12) doesn't pay
- 13) feel 14) asks 15) grow

4 Read and complete the text

- 1) north 2) factories
- 3) decorations 4) cotton

5 Read and complete the text

- 1) community 2) volunteers
- 3) trash 4) help

6 Read and complete the text

- 1) south 2) Nubia 3) colorful 4) songs

7 Punctuate the following:

1. I help my community every week.
2. Do you know the story of Nubia?
3. She wears a colorful scarf.
4. Let's plant trees together.
5. The market is very old and busy.
6. What a beautiful festival!
7. He tells stories every evening.
8. We don't visit the park on Saturday.
9. Many people live in the south of Egypt.

Test (2) on unit (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) family 2) bottles
- 3) the community park 4) happy

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) supermarket 2) Go

3 Read and complete the text

- 1) collect 2) great 3) proud 4) clever

4 Read the text and answer

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) old market 2) special customs

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) Their teacher.
- 4) They see beautiful wooden stalls and colorful things made by hand.

5 Read and write the correct form

- 1) go 2) doesn't 3) makes 4) celebrate

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Peggy and Maddie.
- 2) In the playground.

7 Punctuate the following:

This market is very old and colorful.

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words

My Community and Me

I love my community. I always want to make it better. Every Saturday, my brother and I volunteer at the local park. We collect trash from the ground and plant trees. We feed dogs and cats.

Revision on Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (b) endangered 2) (a) bigger
- 3) (c) footprints 4) (d) pollution
- 5) (b) taller 6) (b) moral 7) (a) drinks
- 8) (d) protect 9) (c) treat

2 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (b) faster 2) (d) bigger 3) (a) colder
- 4) (c) hotter 5) (d) than 6) (a) taller
- 7) (d) than 8) (c) deeper 9) (b) than
- 10) (a) shorter 11) (c) lighter
- 12) (d) higher 13) (a) easier 14) (b) longer
- 15) (a) wider 16) (b) lower
- 17) (d) stronger 18) (b) than
- 19) (d) younger 20) (c) funnier

3 Read and write the correct

- 1) stronger 2) taller 3) cleaner
- 4) than 5) smaller 6) hotter
- 7) than 8) bigger 9) larger
- 10) quieter

4 Read and complete the text with

- 1) wild 2) zoos 3) cages 4) vets

5 Read and complete the text with

- 1) cave 2) footprints 3) trick 4) moral

6 Read and complete the text with ..

- 1) sea grass 2) pollution
- 3) disappearing 4) protect

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Oh dear, the animals are in danger.
2. We see footprints near the cave.
3. That's right said the forest guide.
4. How are you feeling?
5. Some animals live in the wild.

Answers Key

6. The giraffe has a spotted coat.
7. Do you like visiting zoos?
8. The Red Sea dugong is gentle.
9. We protect animals around the world.

Test (3) on unit (3)

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1) giant 2) singing 3) after noon 4) happy

- 2 Choose the correct answer:
1) endangered 2) habitats

- 3 Read and complete the text:
1) trip 2) treasures 3) pictures 4) gifts

- 4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) tall 2) hunting

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) The forest guide shows the visitors different animals.

- 4) The elephant.

- 5 Read and write the correct:
1) than 2) bigger 3) smarter 4) heavier

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Miss Mason.

- 2) One hundred.

- 7 Punctuate the following:
Does Mona go to the school by car?

- 8 Write a paragraph of (24):
How I help Animals

Some animals are endangered. The leopard is endangered. I like leopards. We can protect these animals. I dream to stop hunting animals and pollution.

Revision on Unit 4

- 1 Choose the correct answer from....:

- 1) (c) tour guide 2) (b) Pyramids
3) (c) colorful rocks 4) (c) post office
5) (b) Egyptian Museum 6) (c) camel
7) (b) first 8) (c) pictures 9) (c) hospital

- 2 Choose the correct answer from:

- 1) (b) between 2) (b) next 3) (b) in
4) (b) between 5) (b) in front 6) (c) next

- 3 Read and write the correct:
1) between 2) next 3) in 4) next

- 4 Read and complete the text:
1) tourists 2) Museum
3) treasures 4) natural

- 5 Read and complete the text with:
1) school 2) library
3) post office 4) shopping mall

- 6 Punctuate the following:

1. Welcome to Egypt.
2. The shopping mall is next to the school.
3. We visited the monastery in South Sinai.
4. How are you feeling?
5. Let's take a photo at the Pyramids.
6. Do you like this museum?
7. This is my first time in Egypt.
8. The Salt Lake looks amazing.
9. I love history and adventure.

Test (4) on unit (4)

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) Egyptian Museum 2) tour guide
3) leaflet 4) Khan Al-Khalili

- 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) Egyptian Museum 2) Welcome

- 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1) country 2) museum 3) gift 4) leaflet

- 4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) South Sinai 2) animals and plants

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) Palm trees and colorful rocks.

- 4) The school trip to South Sinai.

- 5 Read and write the correct:

- 1) in front of 2) between
3) next 4) in

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) T 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Miss Mason. 2) They felt terrible.

7 Punctuate the following

The desert is full of colorful rocks and palm trees.

8 Write a paragraph of (24)

My favorite place in Egypt

The Egyptian Museum is my favorite place in Egypt. It is in Cairo. I see a lot of ancient treasures there. The tour guide tells people about the Egyptian history. I like it because it is a great place.

Revision on Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (a) engineer 2) (b) cartoons 3) (c) coat
4) (c) dentist 5) (c) carpenter
6) (a) loudest 7) (d) stories
8) (c) voices 9) (a) furniture

2 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (c) biggest 2) (c) kindest 3) (c) the
4) (a) sharpest 5) (d) funniest
6) (c) thickest 7) (c) smartest 8) (c) the
9) (a) tallest 10) (c) nicest

3 Read and write the correct

- 1) tallest 2) fastest
3) funniest 4) coldest

4 Read and complete the text

- 1) designs 2) doctor 3) coat 4) uniform

5 Punctuate the following:

1. My dad and I work as firefighters.
2. She wears a helmet and a vest.
3. The engineer designs buildings.
4. Do you enjoy puppet shows?
5. We visited a fire station.
6. They protect people from fire.
7. I want to be a doctor.
8. He helped the sick boy.

Test (5) on unit (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) doctor 2) kind 3) firefighter 4) hardest

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) helmet 2) doctor

3 Read and complete the text

- 1) loud 2) fire 3) tools 4) biggest

4 Read the text and answer

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) house 2) bad feeling

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) Because he built the house carelessly.
Later, he learned the house was a gift for him.
4) He promised to give his best.

5 Read and write the correct

- 1) biggest 2) funniest 3) laziest 4) the

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) T 2) F

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Peggy and Maddie.
2) They promised to always speak up if there was bullying.

7 Punctuate the following

This is the best job in the world.

8 Write a paragraph of (24)

The best job for me

A doctor is the best job for me. I like this job very much. I like it because I can help sick people. The best thing about this job is kindness.

Week 1: Based on unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (c) nose 2) (a) eggs
3) (c) touch 4) (b) friends
5) (b) homework 6) (d) garden
7) (c) energy 8) (a) greedy
9) (c) answer 10) (d) soup

Week 2: Based on unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (d) eats 2) (c) eat
3) (b) brushes 4) (a) play
5) (d) wakes 6) (b) eat
7) (b) wears 8) (c) listen
9) (d) have 10) (a) tastes

Week 3: Based on unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (b) cotton 2) (c) decorations
3) (c) community 4) (a) bottles
5) (b) community 6) (a) ducks
7) (b) stories 8) (a) diary
9) (d) culture 10) (b) road

Answers Key

Week 4: Based on unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| 1) (b) help | 2) (a) don't collect |
| 3) (d) live | 4) (b) doesn't throw |
| 5) (a) writes | 6) (c) Do |
| 7) (c) look | 8) (a) doesn't celebrate |
| 9) (a) share | 10) (d) Does |
| 11) (a) write | 12) (c) has |

Week 5: Based on unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1) (b) endangered | 2) (d) catches |
| 3) (b) sea animals | 4) (b) claws |
| 5) (a) striped | 6) (b) habitats |
| 7) (b) kindness | 8) (c) spaces |
| 9) (c) footprints | 10) (a) safe |

Week 6: Based on unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1) (a) bigger | 2) (d) faster than |
| 3) (c) harder | 4) (c) heavier |
| 5) (a) louder than | 6) (a) brighter than |
| 7) (c) heavier than | 8) (a) higher than |
| 9) (d) faster than | 10) (d) hotter than |

Week 7: Based on unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1) (b) library | 2) (a) hospital |
| 3) (c) post office | 4) (d) history |
| 5) (c) desert | 6) (a) letters |
| 7) (b) feel | 8) (a) clothes |
| 9) (d) palm | 10) (a) blog |

Week 8: Based on unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1) (c) on | 2) (b) next |
| 3) (b) between | 4) (c) in front |
| 5) (c) on | 6) (c) behind |
| 7) (a) on | 8) (a) between |
| 9) (c) next | 10) (b) under |

Week 9: Based on unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1) (b) doctor | 2) (a) helmet |
| 3) (b) mentor | 4) (b) ladders |
| 5) (b) furniture | 6) (c) folding paper |
| 7) (a) voice-over-actor | |
| 8) (b) puppets | |
| 9) (c) alarm | 10) (c) skilled |

Week 10: Based on unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1) (c) biggest | 2) (c) longest |
| 3) (d) the | 4) (d) fastest |

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 5) (a) strongest | 6) (c) funniest |
| 7) (b) coldest | 8) (c) deepest |
| 9) (a) highest | 10) (c) longest |

Week 11: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) (a) treasures | 2) (c) voice-over-actor |
| 3) (d) uniform | 4) (b) snack |
| 5) (c) taste | 6) (c) sweet |
| 7) (b) spotted coat | 8) (d) touch |
| 9) (c) library | 10) (b) teaches |
| 11) (a) trunk | 12) (b) jungle |

Week 12: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1) (a) washes | 2) (b) heavier |
| 3) (c) in front | 4) (c) Do |
| 5) (a) bigger | 6) (c) under |
| 7) (d) don't | 8) (a) smallest |
| 9) (a) watch | 10) (a) like |

Week 13: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1) (b) engineer | 2) (d) dates |
| 3) (b) answer | 4) (c) understand |
| 5) (a) energy | 6) (b) exercise |
| 7) (a) mind | 8) (a) tools |
| 9) (c) tour guide | 10) (d) ride |

Week 14: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1) (c) funniest | 2) (c) between |
| 3) (b) wear | 4) (b) harder |
| 5) (d) next | 6) (b) don't |
| 7) (a) study | 8) (b) in front of |
| 9) (a) go | 10) (c) than |

Week 15: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1) (b) sharp claws | 2) (c) tools |
| 3) (a) museum | 4) (b) brushes |
| 5) (d) striped coat | 6) (b) enjoy |
| 7) (c) nurse | 8) (d) wash |
| 9) (b) wake | 10) (c) monkey |

Week 16: Based on all units

1 Choose the correct answer

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1) (a) eats | 2) (b) between |
| 3) (a) doesn't | 4) (d) sharper |
| 5) (c) live | 6) (c) kindest |
| 7) (a) in front of | 8) (d) doesn't |
| 9) (c) oldest | 10) (b) work |

October Month - Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (b) spotted
- 2) (a) tongue
- 3) (a) helmet
- 4) (b) safe
- 5) (d) sick
- 6) (b) Does
- 7) (a) do
- 8) (c) doesn't wear
- 9) (c) don't make
- 10) (d) watch

October Month - Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (c) energy
- 2) (b) kind
- 3) (c) answer
- 4) (b) soup
- 5) (d) snack
- 6) (d) has
- 7) (a) watches
- 8) (b) wash
- 9) (a) doesn't eat
- 10) (a) Does

November Month - Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (c) cartoons
- 2) (b) striped coat
- 3) (b) dangerous
- 4) (c) pyramids
- 5) (c) guide
- 6) (b) brighter
- 7) (d) between
- 8) (c) bravest
- 9) (d) heavier
- 10) (c) between

November Month - Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer

- 1) (c) Khan Al-Khalili Bazar
- 2) (b) wood and nails
- 3) (b) ladders
- 4) (d) save
- 5) (b) folding paper into shapes
- 6) (c) next
- 7) (b) longer
- 8) (d) than
- 9) (a) in front
- 10) (d) heaviest

Al Azhar Practice 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) animals
- 2) dog
- 3) sleep

2 Read and complete the dialogue ...:

- 1) hospital
- 2) patients
- 3) feel
- 4) happy

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions

- 1) He works in a factory that makes cars.
- 2) They go to the countryside to visit their grandparents.

(B) Choose the correct answer:

- 3) big city
- 4) school
- 5) long

4 Choose the correct answer from:

- 1) (b) farmer
- 2) (c) goes
- 3) (b) museum
- 4) (b) under
- 5) (b) post office

5 Reorder the words to make:

- 1) My home is next to the school.

- 2) I play football in the park.
- 3) A librarian looks after the books.
- 4) How does Malak go to school?
- 5) I watch TV in the living room.

Al Azhar Practice 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) busy
- 2) feed
- 3) Sheep

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1) trash
- 2) feed
- 3) clothes
- 4) feel

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Answer the following questions

- 1) Ali rides his bike and looks at the beautiful streets.
- 2) They always go to the Nile River and watch the sunset there.

(B) Choose the correct answer:

- 3) Cairo
- 4) great places
- 5) Ali's brother

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) (a) doctor
- 2) (a) do
- 3) (b) teacher
- 4) (b) between
- 5) (c) Footprints

5 Reorder the words to make:

- 1) Mohamed doesn't like eating fast food.
- 2) My family visits Luxor every year.
- 3) Do you help in your community?
- 4) My village is next to the Nile River.
- 5) A doctor looks after the patients.

Al Azhar Practice 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) every weekend
- 2) his parents
- 3) mummy room

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1) teacher
- 2) school
- 3) uniform
- 4) subject

3 Read the text and answer:

(A) Answer the following questions

- 1) Nader is a tour guide.
- 2) He wears a white shirt and a cape.

(B) Choose the correct answer:

- 3) tourists
- 4) camel
- 5) country

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Answers Key

- 1) (a) tour guide 2) (a) pictures
3) (c) bazar 4) (c) uses 5) (b) between

5 Reorder the words to make

- 1) She reads a book every night.
2) My family visits the museum on Friday.
3) A library is a quiet place.
4) The pen is between the book and the notebook.
5) The elephant carries things with its trunk.

Practice 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) great 2) books
3) shopping mall 4) hospital

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) police officer 2) treasures

3 Read and complete the text with:

- 1) shapes 2) hear 3) nose 4) hard

4 Read the text and answer the

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) Egypt 2) breakfast

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) Omar's dad is a tour guide.
4) He plays football with his friends.

5 Read and write the correct

- 1) goes 2) faster 3) in front of 4) does

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) She felt happy.
2) They annoyed Wanda.

7 Punctuate the following

Where do you go after school?

8 Write a paragraph of (24) words

My daily routine

I get up at 6 o'clock every day. Then I brush my teeth. Next, I get dressed. After that I have lunch. Finally, I go to school. I do my homework after school.

Practice 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) park 2) clothes
3) month 4) proud

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) carpenter 2) desert

3 Read and complete the text with:

- 1) cotton 2) life
3) River 4) peaceful

4 Read the text and answer the

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) photographer 2) wild

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) The lion.
4) A voice-over actor makes voices for cartoons and characters.

5 Read and write the correct

- 1) plays 2) taller
3) on 4) does

6 The story

(A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Because the girls annoyed her.
2) She stayed quiet.

7 Punctuate the following

My father works as a teacher, and his students love him.

8 Write a paragraph of (24)

My favorite animal

The giraffe is my favorite animal. It lives in the forest and the zoo. It has a long neck. It has spotted colors. It eats leaves.

Practice 6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) sick 2) fire 3) protect 4) buildings

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) teacher 2) post office

3 Read and complete the text

- 1) colorful 2) desert
3) mountain 4) monastery

4 Read the text and answer

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) city 2) borrow

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) He loves to see the boats on the sea.
4) Because it is not as crowded as the capital, and the air is cleaner.

5 Read and write the correct:

- 1) visit 2) tallest 3) in 4) doesn't work

6 The story

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) signed 2) medal

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Because her family moved to the big city.
2) Wanda wore a faded blue dress.

7 Punctuate the following

What is your favorite subject?

8 Write a paragraph of (24):

My dream job

My dream job is a police officer. The police officer protects people and saves them from danger. He arrests bad people. I like this job because the police officer always helps people.

Practice 7

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) four 2) science
3) friends 4) three

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) firefighter 2) zebra

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) long 2) brave 3) fur 4) engineer

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) stones 2) longest

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) People sail feluccas on the Nile River.
2) Great Egypt

5 Read and write the correct:

- 1) work 2) sweeter 3) in front 4) does

6 The story

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) regretted 2) terrible

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) They apologized, praised her drawings, and wished her happiness in her new school.
2) They learned that kindness is more important than expensive clothes.

7 Punctuate the following

Where is your school located?

8 Write a paragraph of (24):

Our senses

We have five senses. They are sight, hearing, smelling, touching and tasting. We see with our eyes. We hear with our ears. We smell with our nose. We touch with our hands. We taste with our tongues.

Practice 8

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) busy 2) post office 3) clothes 4) parks

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) carpenter 2) fishermen

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) community 2) help
3) clean 4) protect

4 Read the text and answer:

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) grow 2) farmers

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) They grow many crops like rice, cotton, and vegetables.
4) Because they help feed many people.

5 Read and write the correct:

- 1) eat 2) bigger 3) between 4) don't watch

6 The story

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) Wanda 2) help

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) They moved to the big city.
2) They learned that kindness is more important than expensive clothes.

7 Punctuate the following

What does Ahmed like to eat?

8 Write a paragraph of (24):

My favorite food

Kushary is my favorite food. It is a famous Egyptian food. It contains rice and macaroni. It is delicious. I like it because it tastes delicious when I feel hungry.

Practice 9

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) places 2) temples
3) Alexandria 4) swimming

2 Choose the correct answer:

Answers Key

- 1) voice-over actor 2) community

3 Read and complete the text with:

- 1) learn 2) museum 3) nice 4) help

4 Read the text and answer

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) village 2) farm

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) He grows fresh vegetables like tomatoes and cucumbers.
4) He plays with his friends by the river.

5 Read and write the correct

- 1) go 2) heavier 3) next 4) doesn't play

6 The story

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) T

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) To apologize to her.
2) They felt terrible.

7 Punctuate the following

How long does the horse live?

8 Write a paragraph of (24)

Our community

I love my community. I always want to make it better. I volunteer at the local park. I collect trash from the ground and plant trees. I feed dogs and cats.

Practice 10

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) vegetables 2) water
3) sweets 4) habits

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) striped 2) habitats

3 Read and complete the text with:

- 1) uniform 2) tools 3) save 4) truck

4 Read the text and answer

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) Alexandria 2) Red

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) People enjoy swimming and fishing.
4) To relax and enjoy the water.

5 Read and write the correct

- 1) studies 2) between
3) illegal 4) don't like

6 The story

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1) F 2) F

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) Wanda's family moved to the big city, where they wouldn't face unkindness.
2) They felt terrible.

7 Punctuate the following

We live in Cairo and love it.

8 Write a paragraph of (24)

A visit to the zoo

Last week I went on a school trip. I went with my friends to the zoo. We saw a lot of animals and birds. We took pictures. We enjoyed our time.

Practice 11

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1) village 2) post office
3) garage 4) football

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) carpenter 2) desert

3 Read and complete the text

- 1) pets 2) deserts 3) water 4) kind

4 Read the text and answer

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) teacher 2) English

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3) Ali lives in Alexandria.
4) Ali is twenty four years old.

5 Read and write the correct

- 1) illogical 2) faster
3) in front of 4) play

6 The story

(A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) a hundred 2) silly

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1) They apologized to Wanda.
2) Miss Mason.

7 Punctuate the following

Ahmed and Omar are good friends.

8 Write a paragraph of (24)

A blog about the places in Egypt

Egypt has many interesting places. The Pyramids are in Giza. They are wonderful. The River Nile is the longest river in the world. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of treasures.